

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

---

## STATUTORY INSTRUMENTS

---

# 2001 No. 544

## FINANCIAL SERVICES AND MARKETS

### The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001

*Approved by both Houses of Parliament*

*Made - - - - 26th February 2001*

*Laid before Parliament 27th February 2001*

*Coming into force in accordance with article 2*

The Treasury, in exercise of the powers conferred on them by sections 22(1) and (5), 426 and 428(3) of, and paragraph 25 of Schedule 2 to, the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000<sup>M1</sup>, hereby make the following Order:

#### Marginal Citations

M1 2000 c. 8.

## PART I GENERAL

### Citation

1. This Order may be cited as the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001.

### Commencement

2.—(1) Except as provided by paragraph (2), this Order comes into force on the day on which section 19 of the Act comes into force.

(2) This Order comes into force—

- (a) for the purposes of articles 59, 60 and 87 (funeral plan contracts) on 1st January 2002; and
- (b) for the purposes of articles 61 to 63, 88, 90 and 91 (regulated mortgage contracts) [<sup>F1</sup>on such a day as the Treasury may specify].

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F2</sup>(3) Any day specified under paragraph (2)(b) must be caused to be notified in the London, Edinburgh and Belfast Gazettes published not later than one week before that day.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F1** Words in art. 2(2)(b) substituted (30.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Commencement of Mortgage Regulation\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1777\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)**
- F2** Art. 2(3) inserted (30.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Commencement of Mortgage Regulation\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1777\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)**

#### Interpretation

3.—(1) In this Order—

“the Act” means the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000;

[<sup>F3</sup>“agreement provider” has the meaning given by article 63J(3);

“agreement seller” has the meaning given by article 63J(3);]

“annuities on human life” does not include superannuation allowances and annuities payable out of any fund applicable solely to the relief and maintenance of persons engaged, or who have been engaged, in any particular profession, trade or employment, or of the dependants of such persons;

“buying” includes acquiring for valuable consideration;

“close relative” in relation to a person means—

- (a) his spouse [<sup>F4</sup>or civil partner];
- (b) his children and step children, his parents and step-parents, his brothers and sisters and his step-brothers and step-sisters; and
- (c) the spouse [<sup>F4</sup>or civil partner] of any person within sub-paragraph (b);

[<sup>F5</sup>“the Commission Regulation” means Commission Regulation 1287/2006 of 10 August 2006;]

“contract of general insurance” means any contract falling within Part I of Schedule 1;

“contract of insurance” means any contract of insurance which is a contract of long-term insurance or a contract of general insurance, and includes—

- (a) fidelity bonds, performance bonds, administration bonds, bail bonds, customs bonds or similar contracts of guarantee, where these are—
  - (i) effected or carried out by a person not carrying on a banking business;
  - (ii) not effected merely incidentally to some other business carried on by the person effecting them; and
  - (iii) effected in return for the payment of one or more premiums;
- (b) tontines;
- (c) capital redemption contracts or pension fund management contracts, where these are effected or carried out by a person who—
  - (i) does not carry on a banking business; and
  - (ii) otherwise carries on a regulated activity of the kind specified by article 10(1) or (2);
- (d) contracts to pay annuities on human life;

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (e) contracts of a kind referred to in article 1(2)(e) of the first life insurance directive (collective insurance etc.); and
- (f) contracts of a kind referred to in article 1(3) of the first life insurance directive (social insurance);

but does not include a funeral plan contract (or a contract which would be a funeral plan contract but for the exclusion in article 60);

“contract of long-term insurance” means any contract falling within Part II of Schedule 1;

“contractually based investment” means—

- (a) rights under a qualifying contract of insurance;
- (b) any investment of the kind specified by any of articles 83, 84, 85 and 87; or
- (c) any investment of the kind specified by article 89 so far as relevant to an investment falling within (a) or (b);

[<sup>F5</sup>“credit institution” means—

- (a) a credit institution authorised under the banking consolidation directive [<sup>F6</sup>(as last amended by Directive 2009/111/EC)] other than an institution to which Article 2.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive (the text of which is set out in Schedule 3) applies, or
- (b) an institution which would satisfy the requirements for authorisation as a credit institution under that directive (other than an institution to which Article 2.1 of the markets in financial instruments directive would apply) if it had its registered office (or if it does not have a registered office, its head office) in an EEA State;]

“deposit” has the meaning given by article 5;

[<sup>F7</sup>“electronic money” has the meaning given by regulation 2(1) of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011;]

[<sup>F5</sup>“financial instrument” means any instrument listed in Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive (the text of which is set out in Part 1 of Schedule 2) read with Chapter VI of the Commission Regulation (the text of which is set out in Part 2 of Schedule 2);]

“funeral plan contract” has the meaning given by article 59;

[<sup>F5</sup>“home Member State”, in relation to an investment firm, has the meaning given by Article 4.1.20 of the markets in financial instruments directive, and in relation to a credit institution, has the meaning given by Article 4.7 of the banking consolidation directive;]

[<sup>F8</sup>“home purchase provider” has the meaning given by article 63F(3);]

[<sup>F8</sup>“home purchaser” has the meaning given by article 63F(3);]

“instrument” includes any record whether or not in the form of a document;

[<sup>F5</sup>“investment firm” means a person whose regular occupation or business is the provision or performance of investment services and activities on a professional basis but does not include—

- (a) a person to whom the markets in financial instruments directive does not apply by virtue of Article 2 of that directive (the text of which is set out in Schedule 3);
- (b) a person whose home Member State is an EEA State other than the United Kingdom and to whom, by reason of the fact that the State has given effect to Article 3 of that directive, that directive does not apply by virtue of that Article;
- (c) a person who does not have a home Member State and to whom (if he had his registered office in an EEA State, or, being a person other than a body corporate or a body corporate

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

not having a registered office, if he had his head office in an EEA State) the markets in financial instruments directive would not apply by virtue of Article 2 of that directive;]

[<sup>F5</sup>“investment services and activities” means—

(a) any service provided to third parties listed in Section A of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive (the text of which is set out in Part 3 of Schedule 2) read with Article 52 of Commission Directive 2006/73/EC of 10 August 2006 (the text of which is set out in Part 4 of Schedule 2), or

(b) any activity listed in Section A of Annex I to that directive,

relating to any financial instrument;]

“joint enterprise” means an enterprise into which two or more persons (“the participators”) enter for commercial purposes related to a business or businesses (other than the business of engaging in a regulated activity) carried on by them; and, where a participator is a member of a group, each other member of the group is also to be regarded as a participator in the enterprise;

“local authority” means—

(a) in England and Wales, a local authority within the meaning of the Local Government Act 1972 <sup>M2</sup>, the Greater London Authority, the Common Council of the City of London or the Council of the Isles of Scilly;

(b) in Scotland, a local authority within the meaning of the Local Government (Scotland) Act 1973 <sup>M3</sup>;

(c) in Northern Ireland, a district council within the meaning of the Local Government Act (Northern Ireland) 1972 <sup>M4</sup>;

[<sup>F9</sup>“management company” has the meaning given by Article 2.1(b) of the UCITS directive;]

“managing agent” means a person who is permitted by the Council of Lloyd’s in the conduct of his business as an underwriting agent to perform for a member of Lloyd’s one or more of the following functions—

(a) underwriting contracts of insurance at Lloyd’s;

(b) reinsuring such contracts in whole or in part;

(c) paying claims on such contracts;

[<sup>F5</sup>“market operator” means a market operator within the meaning of Article 4.1.13 of the markets in financial instruments directive, or a person who would be a market operator if he had his registered office, or if he does not have a registered office his head office, in an EEA State, but does not include—

(a) a person to whom the markets in financial instruments directive does not apply by virtue of Article 2 of that directive (the text of which is set out in Schedule 3);

(b) a person who does not have a home Member State to whom (if he had his registered office, or if he does not have a registered office his head office, in an EEA State) the markets in financial instruments directive would not apply by virtue of Article 2 of that directive;]

[<sup>F5</sup>“multilateral trading facility” means—

(a) a multilateral trading facility (within the meaning of Article 4.1.15 of the markets in financial instruments directive) operated by an investment firm, a credit institution or a market operator, or

(b) a facility which—

(i) is operated by an investment firm, a credit institution or market operator which does not have a home Member State, and

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) if its operator had a home Member State, would be a multilateral trading facility within the meaning of Article 4.1.15 of the markets in financial instruments directive;]

[<sup>F10</sup>“occupational pension scheme” has the meaning given by section 1 of the Pension Schemes Act 1993 but with paragraph (b) of the definition omitted;]

“overseas person” means a person who—

- (a) carries on activities of the kind specified by any of articles 14, 21, 25, [<sup>F11</sup>25A,][<sup>F12</sup>25B, 25C,][<sup>F13</sup>25D,][<sup>F14</sup>25E,] 37[<sup>F15</sup>, 39A] 40, 45, 51, 52[<sup>F16</sup>, 53, 53A][<sup>F17</sup>, 53B, 53C, [<sup>F18</sup>53D,] 61, 63B[<sup>F19</sup>, 63F and 63J]] or, so far as relevant to any of those articles, article 64 (or activities of a kind which would be so specified but for the exclusion in article 72); but
- (b) does not carry on any such activities, or offer to do so, from a permanent place of business maintained by him in the United Kingdom;

“pension fund management contract” means a contract to manage the investments of pension funds (other than funds solely for the benefit of the officers or employees of the person effecting or carrying out the contract and their dependants or, in the case of a company, partly for the benefit of officers and employees and their dependants of its subsidiary or holding company or a subsidiary of its holding company); and for the purposes of this definition, “subsidiary” and “holding company” are to be construed in accordance with [<sup>F20</sup>section 1159 of the Companies Act 2006];

[<sup>F21</sup>“personal pension scheme” means a scheme or arrangement which is not an occupational pension scheme or a stakeholder pension scheme and which is comprised in one or more instruments or agreements, having or capable of having effect so as to provide benefits to or in respect of people—

- (a) on retirement,
- (b) on having reached a particular age, or
- (c) on termination of service in an employment;]

[<sup>F22</sup>“plan provider” has the meaning given by paragraph (3) of article 63B, read with paragraphs (7) and (8) of that article;]

“property” includes currency of the United Kingdom or any other country or territory;

“qualifying contract of insurance” means a contract of long-term insurance which is not—

- (a) a reinsurance contract; nor
- (b) a contract in respect of which the following conditions are met—
  - (i) the benefits under the contract are payable only on death or in respect of incapacity due to injury, sickness or infirmity;
  - (ii) <sup>F23</sup> ...
  - (iii) the contract has no surrender value, or the consideration consists of a single premium and the surrender value does not exceed that premium; and
  - (iv) the contract makes no provision for its conversion or extension in a manner which would result in it ceasing to comply with any of the above conditions;

[<sup>F24</sup>“regulated home purchase plan” has the meaning given by article 63F(3);]

[<sup>F24</sup>“regulated home reversion plan” has the meaning given by article 63B(3);]

“regulated mortgage contract” has the meaning given by article 61(3);

[<sup>F25</sup>“regulated sale and rent back agreement” has the meaning given by article 63J(3);]

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

[<sup>F26</sup>“relevant investment” means—

- (a) rights under a qualifying contract of insurance;
- (b) rights under any other contract of insurance;
- (c) any investment of the kind specified by any of articles 83, 84, 85 and 87; or
- (d) any investment of the kind specified by article 89 so far as relevant to an investment falling within (a) or (c);]

[<sup>F27</sup>“reversion seller” has the meaning given by article 63B(3);]

“security” means (except where the context otherwise requires) any investment of the kind specified by any of articles 76 to 82 or, so far as relevant to any such investment, article 89;

“selling”, in relation to any investment, includes disposing of the investment for valuable consideration, and for these purposes “disposing” includes—

- (a) in the case of an investment consisting of rights under a contract—
  - (i) surrendering, assigning or converting those rights; or
  - (ii) assuming the corresponding liabilities under the contract;
- (b) in the case of an investment consisting of rights under other arrangements, assuming the corresponding liabilities under the arrangements; and
- (c) in the case of any other investment, issuing or creating the investment or granting the rights or interests of which it consists;

“stakeholder pension scheme” has the meaning given by section 1 of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 [<sup>F28</sup>in relation to Great Britain and has the meaning given by article 3 of the Welfare Reform and Pensions (Northern Ireland) Order 1999 in relation to Northern Ireland];

“syndicate” means one or more persons, to whom a particular syndicate number has been assigned by or under the authority of the Council of Lloyd’s, carrying out or effecting contracts of insurance written at Lloyd’s;

“voting shares”, in relation to a body corporate, means shares carrying voting rights attributable to share capital which are exercisable in all circumstances at any general meeting of that body corporate.

(2) For the purposes of this Order, a transaction is entered into through a person if he enters into it as agent or arranges, in a manner constituting the carrying on of an activity of the kind specified by article 25(1)[<sup>F29</sup>, 25A(1), 25B(1)[<sup>F30</sup>, 25C(1) or 25E(1)]]], for it to be entered into by another person as agent or principal.

(3) For the purposes of this Order, a contract of insurance is to be treated as falling within Part II of Schedule 1, notwithstanding the fact that it contains related and subsidiary provisions such that it might also be regarded as falling within Part I of that Schedule, if its principal object is that of a contract falling within Part II and it is effected or carried out by an authorised person who has permission to effect or carry out contracts falling within paragraph I of Part II of Schedule 1.

#### Textual Amendments

- F3** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(a)**
- F4** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (5.12.2005) by [The Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Amendments to Subordinate Legislation\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2114\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 16 para. 1(2)**

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F5** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **3(b)**
- F6** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (9.2.2011 for specified purposes, 30.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 12(a)(i)** (with reg. 3)
- F7** Words in art. 3(1) substituted (9.2.2011 for specified purposes, 30.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/99), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 4 para. 12(a)(ii)** (with reg. 3)
- F8** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(a)**
- F9** Words in art. 3(1) substituted (1.7.2011) by The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1613), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 1(2)**
- F10** Words in art. 3(1) substituted (1.10.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/1969), arts. 1(2), **2(2)(a)**
- F11** Word in art. 3(1) inserted (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **3(a)**
- F12** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(b)(i)**
- F13** Word in art. 3(1) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **3(a)**
- F14** Word in art. 3(1) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(c)(i)**
- F15** Word in art. 3(1) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **3(1)(a)**
- F16** Words in art. 3(1) substituted (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **3(b)**
- F17** Words in art. 3(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(b)(ii)**
- F18** Word in art. 3(1) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(c)(ii)**
- F19** Words in art. 3(1) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(c)(iii)**
- F20** Words in art. 3(1) substituted (12.5.2011) by The Companies Act 2006 (Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions) Order 2011 (S.I. 2011/1265), arts. 1(2), **13(2)**
- F21** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (1.10.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/1969), arts. 1(2), **2(2)(b)**
- F22** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(e)**
- F23** Words in art. 3(1) omitted (6.6.2007) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2007 (S.I. 2007/1339), arts. 1, **3**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F24** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(d)**
- F25** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(b)**
- F26** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **3(1)(b)**
- F27** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(1)(e)**
- F28** Words in art. 3(1) inserted (6.4.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/593\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)(b)**
- F29** Words in art. 3(2) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(2)**
- F30** Words in art. 3(2) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **3(2)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C1** Art. 3 applied (21.5.2003) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Collective Investment Schemes\) \(Designated Countries and Territories\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1181\)](#), arts. 1, **3(2)(a)**

#### Marginal Citations

- M2** 1972 c. 70. The definition of "local authority" in section 270 of the 1972 Act has been amended by Sch. 17 to the [Local Government Act 1985 \(c. 51\)](#); and by section 1(5) of the [Local Government \(Wales\) Act 1994 \(c. 19\)](#).
- M3** 1973 c. 65. The definition of "local authority" in section 235 of the 1973 Act was substituted by para. 92(66) of Sch. 13 to the [Local Government etc. \(Scotland\) Act 1994 \(c. 39\)](#).
- M4** 1972 c. 9 (N.I.).

## PART II

### SPECIFIED ACTIVITIES

#### CHAPTER I

#### GENERAL

#### Specified activities: general

4.—(1) The following provisions of this Part specify kinds of activity for the purposes of section 22 of the Act (and accordingly any activity of one of those kinds, which is carried on by way of business<sup>M5</sup>, and relates to an investment of a kind specified by any provision of Part III and applicable to that activity, is a regulated activity for the purposes of the Act).

(2) The kinds of activity specified by articles [F<sup>31</sup>51, 52 and 63N] are also specified for the purposes of section 22(1)(b) of the Act (and accordingly any activity of one of those kinds, when carried on by way of business, is a regulated activity when carried on in relation to property of any kind).



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(3) Subject to paragraph (4), each provision specifying a kind of activity is subject to the exclusions applicable to that provision (and accordingly any reference in this Order to an activity of the kind specified by a particular provision is to be read subject to any such exclusions).

[<sup>F32</sup>(4) Where an investment firm or credit institution—

- (a) provides or performs investment services and activities on a professional basis, and
- (b) in doing so would be treated as carrying on an activity of a kind specified by a provision of this Part but for an exclusion in any of articles 15, 16, 19, 22, 23, 29, 38, 67, 68, 69, 70 and 72E,

that exclusion is to be disregarded and, accordingly, the investment firm or credit institution is to be treated as carrying on an activity of the kind specified by the provision in question.]

[<sup>F33</sup>(4A) Where a person, other than a person specified by Article 1.2 of the insurance mediation directive (the text of which is set out in Part 1 of Schedule 4)—

- (a) for remuneration, takes up or pursues insurance mediation or reinsurance mediation in relation to a risk or commitment located in an EEA State, and
- (b) in doing so would be treated as carrying on an activity of a kind specified by a provision of this Part but for an exclusion in any of articles 30, 66 and 67,

that exclusion is to be disregarded (and accordingly that person is to be treated as carrying on an activity of the kind specified by the provision in question).]

(5) In this article—

<sup>F34</sup> ...

[<sup>F35</sup>“insurance mediation” has the meaning given by Article 2.3 of the insurance mediation directive, the text of which is set out in Part II of Schedule 4;]

<sup>F34</sup> ...

[<sup>F36</sup>“reinsurance mediation” has the meaning given by Article 2.4 of the insurance mediation directive, the text of which is set out in Part III of Schedule 4.]

### Textual Amendments

- F31** Words in art. 4(2) substituted (13.7.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1389\)](#), arts. 1, **3**
- F32** Art. 4(4) substituted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(a)**
- F33** Art. 4(4A) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **3(2)(a)**
- F34** Words in art. 4(5) omitted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **4(b)**
- F35** Words in art. 4(5) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **3(2)(b)(i)**
- F36** Words in art. 4(5) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **3(2)(b)(iii)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Marginal Citations

- M5** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Carrying on Regulated Activities by Way of Business) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/ ), made under section 419 of the Act, makes provision as to the circumstances in which persons are, or are not, to be regarded as carrying on activities by way of business.

## CHAPTER II

### ACCEPTING DEPOSITS

#### *The activity*

#### Accepting deposits

- 5.—(1) Accepting deposits is a specified kind of activity if—
- (a) money received by way of deposit is lent to others; or
  - (b) any other activity of the person accepting the deposit is financed wholly, or to a material extent, out of the capital of or interest on money received by way of deposit.
- (2) In paragraph (1), “deposit” means a sum of money, other than one excluded by any of [<sup>F37</sup>articles 6 to 9A], paid on terms—
- (a) under which it will be repaid, with or without interest or premium, and either on demand or at a time or in circumstances agreed by or on behalf of the person making the payment and the person receiving it; and
  - (b) which are not referable to the provision of property (other than currency) or services or the giving of security.
- (3) For the purposes of paragraph (2), money is paid on terms which are referable to the provision of property or services or the giving of security if, and only if—
- (a) it is paid by way of advance or part payment under a contract for the sale, hire or other provision of property or services, and is repayable only in the event that the property or services is or are not in fact sold, hired or otherwise provided;
  - (b) it is paid by way of security for the performance of a contract or by way of security in respect of loss which may result from the non-performance of a contract; or
  - (c) without prejudice to sub-paragraph (b), it is paid by way of security for the delivery up or return of any property, whether in a particular state of repair or otherwise.

### Textual Amendments

- F37** Words in art. 5(2) substituted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **3(1)**

#### *Exclusions*

#### Sums paid by certain persons

- 6.—(1) A sum is not a deposit for the purposes of article 5 if it is—
- (a) paid by any of the following persons—
    - (i) the Bank of England, the central bank of an EEA State other than the United Kingdom, or the European Central Bank;

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (ii) an authorised person who has permission to accept deposits, or to effect or carry out contracts of insurance;
- (iii) an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(b), (c) or (d) of Schedule 3 to the Act (other than one falling within paragraph (ii) above);
- (iv) the National Savings Bank;
- (v) a municipal bank, that is to say a company which was, immediately before the coming into force of this article, exempt from the prohibition in section 3 of the Banking Act 1987<sup>M6</sup> by virtue of section 4(1) of, and paragraph 4 of Schedule 2 to, that Act;
- (vi) Keesler Federal Credit Union;
- (vii) a body of persons certified as a school bank by the National Savings Bank or by an authorised person who has permission to accept deposits;
- (viii) a local authority;
- (xi) any body which by virtue of any enactment has power to issue a precept to a local authority in England and Wales or a requisition to a local authority in Scotland, or to the expenses of which, by virtue of any enactment, a local authority in the United Kingdom is or can be required to contribute (and in this paragraph, "enactment" includes an enactment comprised in, or in an instrument made under, an Act of the Scottish Parliament);
- (x) [<sup>F38</sup>the European Union or] the European Atomic Energy Community<sup>F38</sup> ...;
- (xi) the European Investment Bank;
- (xii) the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development;
- (xiii) the International Finance Corporation;
- (xiv) the International Monetary Fund;
- (xv) the African Development Bank;
- (xvi) the Asian Development Bank;
- (xvii) the Caribbean Development Bank;
- (xviii) the Inter-American Development Bank;
- (xix) the European Bank for Reconstruction and Development;
- [<sup>F39</sup>(xx) the Council of Europe Development Bank;]
- (b) paid by a person other than one mentioned in sub-paragraph (a) in the course of carrying on a business consisting wholly or to a significant extent of lending money;
- (c) paid by one company to another at a time when both are members of the same group or when the same individual is a majority shareholder controller of both of them; or
- (d) paid by a person who, at the time when it is paid, is a close relative of the person receiving it or who is, or is a close relative of, a director or manager of that person or who is, or is a close relative of, a controller of that person.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(c), an individual is a majority shareholder controller of a company if he is a controller of the company by virtue of paragraph (a), (c), (e) or (g) of section 422(2) of the Act, and if in his case the greatest percentage of those referred to in those paragraphs is 50 or more.

(3) In the application of sub-paragraph (d) of paragraph (1) to a sum paid by a partnership, that sub-paragraph is to have effect as if, for the reference to the person paying the sum, there were substituted a reference to each of the partners.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F38** Words in art. 6(1)(a)(x) substituted (22.4.2011) by virtue of [The Treaty of Lisbon \(Changes in Terminology\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1043\)](#), arts. 2, **3-6**
- F39** Art. 6(1)(a)(xx) substituted (5.6.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion and Miscellaneous Amendments\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1310\)](#), arts. 1, **4(1)**

### Marginal Citations

- M6** 1987 c. 22. Section 3 was amended by the [Bank of England Act 1998 \(c. 11\)](#), Sch. 5, paras 1 and 3. "Municipal bank" is defined in section 103 of the Banking Act 1987, which was amended by the [Local Government Act 1992 \(c. 19\)](#), **Sch. 3**, para. 22, and by the [Local Government and Rating Act 1997 \(c. 29\)](#), Sch. 3, para. 21.

### Sums received by solicitors etc.

7.—(1) A sum is not a deposit for the purposes of article 5 if it is received by a practising solicitor acting in the course of his profession.

(2) In paragraph (1), "practising solicitor" means—

- (a) a solicitor who is qualified to act as such under section 1 of the Solicitors Act 1974 <sup>M7</sup>, article 4 of the Solicitors (Northern Ireland) Order 1976 <sup>M8</sup> or section 4 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 <sup>M9</sup>;
- (b) a recognised body;
- (c) a registered foreign lawyer in the course of providing professional services as a member of a multi-national partnership;
- (d) a registered European lawyer; or
- (e) a partner of a registered European lawyer who is providing professional services in accordance with—
  - (i) rules made under section 31 <sup>M10</sup> of the Solicitors Act 1974;
  - (ii) regulations made under article 26 of the Solicitors (Northern Ireland) Order 1976; or
  - (iii) rules made under section 34 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 <sup>M11</sup>.

(3) In this article—

- (a) "a recognised body" means a body corporate recognised by—
  - (i) the Council of the Law Society under section 9 of the Administration of Justice Act 1985 <sup>M12</sup>;
  - (ii) the Incorporated Law Society of Northern Ireland under article 26A of the Solicitors (Northern Ireland) Order 1976 <sup>M13</sup>; or
  - (iii) the Council of the Law Society of Scotland under section 34 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980;
- (b) "registered foreign lawyer" has the meaning given by section 89 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 <sup>M14</sup> or, in Scotland, section 65 of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 <sup>M15</sup>;
- (c) "multi-national partnership" has the meaning given by section 89 of the Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 but, in Scotland, is a reference to a "multi-national practice" within the meaning of section 60A of the Solicitors (Scotland) Act 1980 <sup>M16</sup> "registered European lawyer" has the meaning given by regulation 2(1) of the European Communities (Lawyer's

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Practice) Regulations 2000<sup>M17</sup> or regulation 2(1) of the European Communities (Lawyer's Practice) (Scotland) Regulation 2000<sup>M18</sup>.

**Modifications etc. (not altering text)**

**C2** Art. 7(1) applied (with modifications) (E.W.S.) (23.12.2011) by [The Legal Services Act 2007 \(Designation as a Licensing Authority\) \(No. 2\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2866\)](#), arts. 1(2), 8(3), **Sch. 3**

**Marginal Citations**

- M7** 1974 c. 47.
- M8** [S.I. 1976/582 \(N.I. 12\)](#); relevant amending instrument is [S.I. 1989/1343 \(N.I. 14\)](#).
- M9** 1980 c. 46.
- M10** Section 31 was amended by para. 10 of Sch. 17 to the [Courts and Legal Services Act 1990 \(c. 41\)](#), and by para. 3 of Sch. 6 to, and para. 1 of Sch. 7 to, the [Access to Justice Act 1999 \(c. 22\)](#).
- M11** Amended by section 31 of the [Law Reform \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) \(Scotland\) Act 1990 \(c. 40\)](#).
- M12** [1985 c. 61](#); section 9 was amended by para. 54 of Sch. 18 to the [Courts and Legal Services Act 1990](#), and by para. 1 of Sch. 4 to the [European Communities \(Lawyer's Practice\) Regulations 2000 \(S.I. 2000/1119\)](#), and was repealed in part by Part II of Sch. 15 to the [Access to Justice Act 1999](#).
- M13** Inserted by article 10 of the [Solicitors \(Amendment\) \(Northern Ireland\) Order 1989 \(S.I. 1989/1343\) \(N.I. 14\)](#).
- M14** [1990 c. 41](#); section 89 was amended by para. 14 of Sch. 4 to the [European Communities \(Lawyer's Practice\) Regulations 2000 \(S.I. 2000/1119\)](#).
- M15** Amended by para. 29(15) of Sch. 8 to the [Law Reform \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) \(Scotland\) Act 1990 \(c. 40\)](#).
- M16** Inserted by section 32 of the [Law Reform \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) \(Scotland\) Act 1990 \(c. 40\)](#).
- M17** [S.I. 2000/1119](#).
- M18** Scottish Statutory Instruments [2000 No. 121](#).

**Sums received by persons authorised to deal etc.**

8. A sum is not a deposit for the purposes of article 5 if it is received by a person who is—
- (a) an authorised person with permission to carry on an activity of the kind specified by any of articles 14, 21, 25, 37, 51 and 52, or
  - (b) an exempt person in relation to any such activity,

in the course of, or for the purpose of, [<sup>F40</sup>carrying on any such activity (or any activity which would be such an activity but for any exclusion made by this Part)] with or on behalf of the person by or on behalf of whom the sum is paid.

**Textual Amendments**

**F40** Words in art. 8 substituted (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(a), **3**

**Sums received in consideration for the issue of debt securities**

9.—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), a sum is not a deposit for the purposes of article 5 if it is received by a person as consideration for the issue by him of any investment of the kind specified by article 77 or 78.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) The exclusion in paragraph (1) does not apply to the receipt by a person of a sum as consideration for the issue by him of commercial paper unless—

- (a) the commercial paper is issued to persons—
  - (i) whose ordinary activities involve them in acquiring, holding, managing or disposing of investments (as principal or agent) for the purposes of their businesses; or
  - (ii) who it is reasonable to expect will acquire, hold, manage or dispose of investments (as principal or agent) for the purposes of their businesses; and
- (b) the redemption value of the commercial paper is not less than £100,000 (or an amount of equivalent value denominated wholly or partly in a currency other than sterling), and no part of the commercial paper may be transferred unless the redemption value of that part is not less than £100,000 (or such an equivalent amount).

[<sup>F41</sup>(3) In paragraph (2), “commercial paper” means an investment of the kind specified by article 77 or 78 having a maturity of less than one year from the date of issue.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F41** Art. 9(3) substituted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **12**

#### [<sup>F42</sup>Sums received in exchange for electronic money

**9A.** A sum is not a deposit for the purposes of article 5 if it is immediately exchanged for electronic money.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F42** Art. 9A inserted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **3(2)**

#### [<sup>F43</sup>Information society services

**9AA.** Article 5 is subject to the exclusion in article 72A (information society services).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F43** Art. 9AA inserted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(2)**

#### [<sup>F44</sup>Funds received for payment services

**9AB.—**(1) A sum is not a deposit for the purposes of article 5 if it is received by an authorised payment institution, an EEA authorised payment institution [<sup>F45</sup>, a small payment institution, an electronic money institution or an EEA authorised electronic money institution] from a payment service user with a view to the provision of payment services.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), “authorised payment institution”, “EEA authorised payment institution”, “small payment institution”, “payment services” and “payment service user” have the meanings given in the Payment Services Regulations 2009 [<sup>F46</sup>and “electronic money

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

institution” and “EEA authorised electronic money institution” have the meanings given in the Electronic Money Regulations 2011.]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F44** Art. 9AB inserted (1.11.2009) by [The Payment Services Regulations 2009 \(S.I. 2009/209\)](#), reg. 1(2) (c), [Sch. 6 para. 4\(a\)](#)
- F45** Words in art. 9AB(1) substituted (9.2.2011 for specified purposes, 30.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 4 para. 12\(b\)\(i\)](#) (with reg. 3)
- F46** Words in art. 9AB(2) inserted (9.2.2011 for specified purposes, 30.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 4 para. 12\(b\)\(ii\)](#) (with reg. 3)

## [<sup>F47</sup>CHAPTER IIA

### ELECTRONIC MONEY

#### Textual Amendments

- F47** Pt. 2 Ch. 2A inserted (11.4.2002 for specified purposes, 27.4.2002 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4 (with arts. 9, 10)

#### *The activity*

#### Issuing electronic money

**9B.** Issuing electronic money [<sup>F48</sup>by—

- (a) a credit institution, a credit union or a municipal bank; or
- (b) a person who is deemed to have been granted authorisation under regulation 74 of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011 or who falls within regulation 76(1) of those Regulations,]

is a specified kind of activity.

#### Textual Amendments

- F48** Art. 9B(a)(b) and word inserted (9.2.2011 for specified purposes, 30.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 4 para. 12\(c\)](#) (with reg. 3)

[  
<sup>F49</sup>**9BA.** Articles 9C to 9I and 9K apply only in the case of a person falling within regulation 76(1) of the Electronic Money Regulations 2011.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F49** Art. 9BA inserted (9.2.2011 for specified purposes, 30.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 4 para. 12\(d\)](#) (with reg. 3)

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## Exclusions

### Persons certified as small issuers etc.

**9C.**—(1) There is excluded from article 9B the issuing of electronic money by a person to whom the Authority has given a certificate under this article (provided the certificate has not been revoked).

(2) An application for a certificate may be made by—

- (a) a body corporate, or
- (b) a partnership,

(other than a credit institution as defined in <sup>F50</sup>Article 4(1)(a)] of the banking consolidation directive) which has its head office in the United Kingdom.

(3) The authority must, on the application of such a person (“A”), give A a certificate if it appears to the Authority that paragraph (4), (5) or (6) applies.

(4) This paragraph applies if—

- (a) A does not issue electronic money except on terms that the electronic device on which the monetary value is stored is subject to a maximum storage amount of not more than 150 euro; and
- (b) A’s total liabilities with respect to the issuing of electronic money do not (or will not) usually exceed 5 million euro and do not (or will not) ever exceed 6 million euro.

(5) This paragraph applies if—

- (a) the condition in paragraph (4)(a) is met;
- (b) A’s total liabilities with respect to the issuing of electronic money do not (or will not) exceed 10 million euro; and
- (c) electronic money issued by A is accepted as a means of payment only by—
  - (i) subsidiaries of A which perform operational or other ancillary functions related to electronic money issued or distributed by A; or
  - (ii) other members of the same group as A (other than subsidiaries of A).

(6) This paragraph applies if—

- (a) the conditions in paragraphs (4)(a) and (5)(b) are met; and
- (b) electronic money issued by A is accepted as a means of payment, in the course of business, by not more than one hundred persons where—
  - (i) those persons accept such electronic money only at locations within the same premises or limited local area; or
  - (ii) those persons have a close financial or business relationship with A, such as a common marketing or distribution scheme.

(7) For the purposes of paragraph (6)(b)(i), locations are to be treated as situated within the same premises or limited local area if they are situated within—

- (a) a shopping centre, airport, railway station, bus station, or campus of a university, polytechnic, college, school or similar educational establishment; or
- (b) an area which does not exceed four square kilometres;

but sub-paragraphs (a) and (b) are illustrative only and are not to be treated as limiting the scope of paragraph (6)(b)(i).

(8) For the purposes of paragraph (6)(b)(ii), persons are not to be treated as having a close financial or business relationship with A merely because they participate in arrangements for the acceptance of electronic money issued by A.



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(9) In this article, references to amounts in euro include references to equivalent amounts in sterling.

(10) A person to whom a certificate has been given under this article (and whose certificate has not been revoked) is referred to in this Chapter as a “certified person”.

#### Textual Amendments

**F50** Words in art. 9C(2) substituted (1.1.2007) by [The Capital Requirements Regulations 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3221\)](#), reg. 1(1), [Sch. 6 para. 6\(2\)](#)

#### Applications for certificates

**9D.** The following provisions of the Act apply to applications to the Authority for certificates under 9C (and the determination of such applications) as they apply to applications for Part IV permissions (and the determination of such applications)—

- (a) section 51(1)(b) and (3) to (6);
- (b) section 52, except subsections (6), (8) and (9)(a) and (b); and
- (c) section 55(1).

#### Revocation of certificate on Authority’s own initiative

**9E.—**(1) The Authority may revoke a certificate given to a person (“A”) under article 9C if—

- (a) it appears to it that A does not meet the relevant conditions, or has failed to meet the relevant conditions at any time since the certificate was given; or
- (b) the person to whom the certificate was given has contravened any rule or requirement to which he is subject as a result of article 9G.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), A meets the relevant conditions at any time if, at that time, paragraph (4), (5) or (6) of article 9C applies.

(3) Sections 54 and 55(2) of the Act apply to the revocation of a certificate under paragraph (1) as they apply to the cancellation of a Part IV permission on the Authority’s own initiative, as if references in those sections to an authorised person were references to a certified person.

#### Revocation of certificate on request

**9F.—**(1) A certified person (“B”) may apply to the Authority for his certificate to be revoked, and the Authority must then revoke the certificate and give B written notice that it has done so.

(2) An application under paragraph (1) must be made in such manner as the Authority may direct.

(3) If—

- (a) B has made an application under Part IV of the Act for permission to carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by article 9B (or for variation of an existing permission so as to add a regulated activity of that kind), and
- (b) on making an application for revocation of his certificate under paragraph (1), he requests that the revocation be conditional on the granting of his application under Part IV of the Act,

the revocation of B’s certificate is to be conditional on the granting of his application under Part IV of the Act.

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Obtaining information from certified persons etc.**

**9G.**—(1) The Authority may make rules requiring certified persons to provide information to the Authority about their activities so far as relating to the issuing of electronic money, including the amount of their liabilities with respect to the issuing of electronic money.

(2) Section 148 of the Act (modification or waiver of rules) applies in relation to rules made under paragraph (1) as if references in that section to an authorised person were references to a certified person.

(3) Section 150 of the Act (actions for damages) applies in relation to a rule made under paragraph (1) as if the reference in subsection (1) of that section to an authorised person were a reference to a certified person.

(4) The Authority may, by notice in writing given to a certified person, require him—

- (a) to provide specified information or information of a specified description; or
- (b) to produce specified documents or documents of a specified description.

(5) Paragraph (4) applies only to information or documents reasonably required for the purposes of determining whether the certified person meets, or has met, the relevant conditions.

(6) Subsections (2), (5) and (6) of section 165 of the Act (Authority’s power to require information) apply to a requirement imposed under paragraph (4) as they apply to a requirement imposed under that section.

(7) Section 166 of the Act (reports by skilled persons) has effect as if—

- (a) the reference in subsection (1) of that section to section 165 included a reference to paragraph (4) above; and
- (b) the reference in section 166(2)(a) of the Act to an authorised person included a reference to a certified person.

(8) Subsection (4) of section 168 of the Act (appointment of persons to carry out investigations in particular cases) has effect as if it provided for subsection (5) of that section to apply if it appears to the Authority that there are circumstances suggesting that a certified person may not meet, or may not have met, the relevant conditions.

(9) Sections 175 (information and documents: supplemental provisions), 176 (entry of premises under warrant) and 177 (offences) of the Act apply to a requirement imposed under paragraph (4) as they apply to a requirement imposed under section 165 of the Act (the reference in section 176(3) (a) to an authorised person being read as a reference to a certified person).

(10) In this article—

- (a) “specified”, in paragraph (4), means specified in the notice mentioned in that paragraph;
- (b) a certified person (“A”) meets the relevant conditions at any time if, at that time, paragraph (4), (5) or (6) of article 9C applies.

### *Supplemental*

### **Rules prohibiting the issue of electronic money at a discount**

**9H.**—(1) The Authority may make rules applying to authorised persons with permission to carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 9B, prohibiting the issue of electronic money having a monetary value greater than the funds received.

(2) Section 148 of the Act (modification or waiver of rules) applies in relation to rules made under paragraph (1).

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### False claims to be a certified person

**9I.** A person who is not a certified person is to be treated as guilty of an offence under section 24 of the Act (false claims to be authorised or exempt) if he—

- (a) describes himself (in whatever terms) as a certified person;
- (b) behaves, or otherwise holds himself out, in a manner which indicates (or which is reasonably likely to be understood as indicating) that he is a certified person.

### Exclusion of electronic money from the compensation scheme

**9J.** The compensation scheme established under Part XV of the Act is not to provide for the compensation of persons in respect of claims made in connection with any activity of the kind specified by article 9B.

### Record of certified persons

**9K.** The record maintained by the Authority under section 347 of the Act (public record of authorised persons etc.) must include every certified person.]

### Funds received for payment services

<sup>F51</sup>**9L.** . . . . .

**Textual Amendments**

**F51** Art. 9L omitted (9.2.2011 for specified purposes, 30.4.2011 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Electronic Money Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/99\)](#), reg. 1(2), [Sch. 4 para. 12\(e\)](#) (with reg. 3)

## CHAPTER III

### INSURANCE

#### *The activities*

### Effecting and carrying out contracts of insurance

- 10.—**(1) Effecting a contract of insurance as principal is a specified kind of activity.
- (2) Carrying out a contract of insurance as principal is a specified kind of activity.

#### *Exclusions*

### Community co-insurers

**11.—**(1) There is excluded from article 10(1) or (2) the effecting or carrying out of a contract of insurance by an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(d) of Schedule 3 to the Act—

- (a) other than through a branch in the United Kingdom; and
- (b) pursuant to a Community co-insurance operation in which the firm is participating otherwise than as the leading insurer.

(2) In paragraph (1), “Community co-insurance operation” and “leading insurer” have the same meaning as in the Council Directive of 30 May 1978 on the co-ordination of laws, regulations and administrative provisions relating to Community co-insurance (No. [78/473/EEC](#)) <sup>M19</sup>.

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Marginal Citations

M19 O.J. No. L151, 7.6.1978, p.25.

## Breakdown insurance

12.—(1) There is excluded from article 10(1) or (2) the effecting or carrying out, by a person who does not otherwise carry on an activity of the kind specified by that article, of a contract of insurance which—

- (a) is a contract under which the benefits provided by that person (“the provider”) are exclusively or primarily benefits in kind in the event of accident to or breakdown of a vehicle; and
- (b) contains the terms mentioned in paragraph (2).

(2) Those terms are that—

- (a) the assistance takes either or both of the forms mentioned in paragraph (3)(a) and (b);
- (b) the assistance is not available outside the United Kingdom and the Republic of Ireland except where it is provided without the payment of additional premium by a person in the country concerned with whom the provider has entered into a reciprocal agreement; and
- (c) assistance provided in the case of an accident or breakdown occurring in the United Kingdom or the Republic of Ireland is, in most circumstances, provided by the provider’s servants.

(3) The forms of assistance are—

- (a) repairs to the relevant vehicle at the place where the accident or breakdown has occurred; this assistance may also include the delivery of parts, fuel, oil, water or keys to the relevant vehicle;
- (b) removal of the relevant vehicle to the nearest or most appropriate place at which repairs may be carried out, or to—
  - (i) the home, point of departure or original destination within the United Kingdom of the driver and passengers, provided the accident or breakdown occurred within the United Kingdom;
  - (ii) the home, point of departure or original destination within the Republic of Ireland of the driver and passengers, provided the accident or breakdown occurred within the Republic of Ireland or within Northern Ireland;
  - (iii) the home, point of departure or original destination within Northern Ireland of the driver and passengers, provided the accident or breakdown occurred within the Republic of Ireland;

and this form of assistance may include the conveyance of the driver or passengers of the relevant vehicle, with the vehicle, or (where the vehicle is to be conveyed only to the nearest or most appropriate place at which repairs may be carried out) separately, to the nearest location from which they may continue their journey by other means.

(4) A contract does not fail to meet the condition in paragraph (1)(a) solely because the provider may reimburse the person entitled to the assistance for all or part of any sums paid by him in respect of assistance either because he failed to identify himself as a person entitled to the assistance or because he was unable to get in touch with the provider in order to claim the assistance.

(5) In this article—

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“the assistance” means the benefits to be provided under a contract of the kind mentioned in paragraph (1);

“breakdown” means an event—

- (a) which causes the driver of the relevant vehicle to be unable to start a journey in the vehicle or involuntarily to bring the vehicle to a halt on a journey because of some malfunction of the vehicle or failure of it to function, and
- (b) after which the journey cannot reasonably be commenced or continued in the relevant vehicle;

“the relevant vehicle” means the vehicle (including a trailer or caravan) in respect of which the assistance is required.

### **[<sup>F52</sup>Information society services**

**12A.** Article 10 is subject to the exclusion in article 72A (information society services), as qualified by paragraph (2) of that article.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F52** Art. 12A and words inserted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(3)**

### *Supplemental*

#### **Application of sections 327 and 332 of the Act to insurance market activities**

**13.—**(1) In sections 327(5) and (7) and 332(3)(b) of the Act (exemption from the general prohibition for members of the professions, and rules in relation to such persons), the references to “a regulated activity” and “regulated activities” do not include—

- (a) any activity of the kind specified by article 10(1) or (2), where—
  - (i) P is a member of the Society; and
  - (ii) by virtue of section 316 of the Act (application of the Act to Lloyd’s underwriting), the general prohibition does not apply to the carrying on by P of that activity; or
- (b) any activity of the kind specified by article 10(2), where—
  - (i) P is a former underwriting member; and
  - (ii) the contract of insurance in question is one underwritten by P at Lloyd’s.

(2) In paragraph (1)—

“member of the Society” has the same meaning as in Lloyd’s Act 1982 <sup>M20</sup>; and

“former underwriting member” has the meaning given by section 324(1) of the Act.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M20** 1982 c. 14.

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER IV

### DEALING IN INVESTMENTS AS PRINCIPAL

#### *The activity*

#### **Dealing in investments as principal**

**14.**—<sup>[F53]</sup>(1) Buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting securities or contractually based investments (other than investments of the kind specified by article 87, or article 89 so far as relevant to that article) as principal is a specified kind of activity.

<sup>[F54]</sup>(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to a kind of activity to which article 25D applies.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F53** Art. 14(1): art. 14 renumbered as art. 14(1) (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **5(a)**

**F54** Art. 14(2) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **5(b)**

#### *Exclusions*

#### **Absence of holding out etc.**

**15.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (3), a person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 by entering into a transaction which relates to a security or is the assignment (or, in Scotland, the assignation) of a qualifying contract of insurance (or an investment of the kind specified by article 89, so far as relevant to such a contract), unless—

- (a) A holds himself out as willing, as principal, to buy, sell or subscribe for investments of the kind to which the transaction relates at prices determined by him generally and continuously rather than in respect of each particular transaction;
- (b) A holds himself out as engaging in the business of buying investments of the kind to which the transaction relates, with a view to selling them;
- (c) A holds himself out as engaging in the business of underwriting investments of the kind to which the transaction relates; or
- (d) A regularly solicits members of the public with the purpose of inducing them, as principals or agents, to enter into transactions constituting activities of the kind specified by article 14, and the transaction is entered into as a result of his having solicited members of the public in that manner.

(2) In paragraph (1)(d), “members of the public” means any persons other than—

- (a) authorised persons or persons who are exempt persons in relation to activities of the kind specified by article 14;
- (b) members of the same group as A;
- (c) persons who are or who propose to become participators with A in a joint enterprise;
- (d) any person who is solicited by A with a view to the acquisition by A of 20 per cent or more of the voting shares in a body corporate;

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (e) if A (either alone or with members of the same group as himself) holds more than 20 per cent of the voting shares in a body corporate, any person who is solicited by A with a view to—
  - (i) the acquisition by A of further shares in the body corporate; or
  - (ii) the disposal by A of shares in the body corporate to the person solicited or to a member of the same group as the person solicited;
- (f) any person who—
  - (i) is solicited by A with a view to the disposal by A of shares in a body corporate to the person solicited or to a member of the same group as that person; and
  - (ii) either alone or with members of the same group holds 20 per cent or more of the voting shares in the body corporate;
- (g) any person whose head office is outside the United Kingdom, who is solicited by an approach made or directed to him at a place outside the United Kingdom and whose ordinary business involves him in carrying on activities of the kind specified by any of articles 14, 21, 25, 37, 40, 45, 51, 52 and 53 or (so far as relevant to any of those articles) article 64, or would do so apart from any exclusion from any of those articles made by this Order.

(3) This article does not apply where A enters into the transaction as bare trustee or, in Scotland, as nominee for another person and is acting on that other person's instructions (but the exclusion in article 66(1) applies if the conditions set out there are met).

[<sup>F55</sup>(4) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F55** Art. 15(4) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **6**

#### Dealing in contractually based investments

**16.**—[<sup>F56</sup>(1)] A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 by entering into a transaction relating to a contractually based investment—

- (a) with or through an authorised person, or an exempt person acting in the course of a business comprising a regulated activity in relation to which he is exempt; or
- (b) through an office outside the United Kingdom maintained by a party to the transaction, and with or through a person whose head office is situated outside the United Kingdom and whose ordinary business involves him in carrying on activities of the kind specified by any of articles 14, 21, 25, 37, 40, 45, 51, 52 and 53 or, so far as relevant to any of those articles, article 64 (or would do so apart from any exclusion from any of those articles made by this Order).

[<sup>F57</sup>(2) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F56** Art. 16(1): art. 16 renumbered as art. 16(1) (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **7(a)**

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F57** Art. 16(2) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **7(b)**

### Acceptance of instruments creating or acknowledging indebtedness

**17.—(1)** A person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 by accepting an instrument creating or acknowledging indebtedness in respect of any loan, credit, guarantee or other similar financial accommodation or assurance which he has made, granted or provided.

(2) The reference in paragraph (1) to a person accepting an instrument includes a reference to a person becoming a party to an instrument otherwise than as a debtor or a surety.

### Issue by a company of its own shares etc.

**18.—(1)** There is excluded from article 14 the issue by a company of its own shares or share warrants, and the issue by any person of his own debentures or debenture warrants.

(2) In this article—

- (a) “company” means any body corporate other than an open-ended investment company;
- (b) “shares” and “debentures” include any investment of the kind specified by article 76 <sup>[F58]</sup>, 77 or 77A];
- (c) “share warrants” and “debenture warrants” mean any investment of the kind specified by article 79 which relates to shares in the company concerned or, as the case may be, debentures issued by <sup>[F59]</sup>the person concerned].

#### Textual Amendments

**F58** Words in art. 18(2)(b) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 5(a)**

**F59** Words in art. 18(2)(c) substituted (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(a), **4**

### <sup>[F60]</sup>Dealing by a company in its own shares

**18A.—(1)** A company does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 by purchasing its own shares where <sup>[F61]</sup>section 724 of the Companies Act 2006] (Treasury shares) applies to the shares purchased.

(2) A company does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 by dealing in its own shares held as treasury shares, in accordance with <sup>[F62]</sup>section 727 (Treasury shares: disposal) or 729 (Treasury shares: cancellation) of that Act].

(3) In this article “shares held as treasury shares” has the same meaning as in that Act.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F60** Art. 18A inserted (1.12.2003) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 3\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/2822\)](#), arts. 1, **3**

**F61** Words in art. 18A(1) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(3)(a)**



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

**F62** Words in art. 18A(2) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(3)(b)**

## Risk management

**19.**—(1) A person (“B”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 by entering as principal into a transaction with another person (“C”) if—

- (a) the transaction relates to investments of the kind specified by any of articles 83 to 85 (or article 89 so far as relevant to any of those articles);
- (b) neither B nor C is an individual;
- (c) the sole or main purpose for which B enters into the transaction (either by itself or in combination with other such transactions) is that of limiting the extent to which a relevant business will be affected by any identifiable risk arising otherwise than as a result of the carrying on of a regulated activity; and
- (d) the relevant business consists mainly of activities other than—
  - (i) regulated activities; or
  - (ii) activities which would be regulated activities but for any exclusion made by this Part.

(2) In paragraph (1), “relevant business” means a business carried on by—

- (a) B;
- (b) a member of the same group as B; or
- (c) where B and another person are, or propose to become, participators in a joint enterprise, that other person.

[<sup>F63</sup>(3) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

### Textual Amendments

**F63** Art. 19(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8**

## Other exclusions

**20.** Article 14 is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 68 (sale of goods and supply of services), 69 (groups and joint enterprises), 70 (sale of body corporate), 71 (employee share schemes)[<sup>F64</sup>, 72 (overseas persons) and 72A (information society services)].

### Textual Amendments

**F64** Words in art. 20 substituted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(4)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER V

### DEALING IN INVESTMENTS AS AGENT

#### *The activity*

#### **Dealing in investments as agent**

21.—<sup>[F65]</sup>(1) Buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting securities or <sup>[F66]</sup>relevant investments] (other than investments of the kind specified by article 87, or article 89 so far as relevant to that article) as agent is a specified kind of activity.

<sup>[F67]</sup>(2) Paragraph (1) does not apply to a kind of activity to which article 25D applies.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F65** Art. 21(1): art. 21 renumbered as art. 21(1) (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **9(a)**
- F66** Words in art. 21 substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **4(1)**
- F67** Art. 21(2) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **9(b)**

#### *Exclusions*

#### **Deals with or through authorised persons**

22.—(1) A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 21 by entering into a transaction as agent for another person (“the client”) with or through an authorised person if—

- (a) the transaction is entered into on advice given to the client by an authorised person; or
- (b) it is clear, in all the circumstances, that the client, in his capacity as an investor, is not seeking and has not sought advice from the agent as to the merits of the client’s entering into the transaction (or, if the client has sought such advice, the agent has declined to give it but has recommended that the client seek such advice from an authorised person).

<sup>[F68]</sup>(2) But the exclusion in paragraph (1) does not apply if—

- (a) the transaction relates to a contract of insurance; or
- (b) the agent receives from any person other than the client any pecuniary reward or other advantage, for which he does not account to the client, arising out of his entering into the transaction.]

<sup>[F69]</sup>(3) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F68** Art. 22(2) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **4(2)**
- F69** Art. 22(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **10**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C3** Art. 22 modified (31.10.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Interim Permissions\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3374\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. para. 10** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C4** Art. 22 modified (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\)](#), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. para. 11** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C5** Art. 22 modified (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. para. 10(1)** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C6** Art. 22 modified (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), art. 1(3), **Sch. para. 11** (with Sch. para. 4)

### Risk management

**23.—**(1) A person (“B”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 21 by entering as agent for a relevant person into a transaction with another person (“C”) if—

- (a) the transaction relates to investments of the kind specified by any of articles 83 to 85 (or article 89 so far as relevant to any of those articles);
- (b) neither B nor C is an individual;
- (c) the sole or main purpose for which B enters into the transaction (either by itself or in combination with other such transactions) is that of limiting the extent to which a relevant business will be affected by any identifiable risk arising otherwise than as a result of the carrying on of a regulated activity; and
- (d) the relevant business consists mainly of activities other than—
  - (i) regulated activities; or
  - (ii) activities which would be regulated activities but for any exclusion made by this Part.

(2) In paragraph (1), “relevant person” means—

- (a) a member of the same group as B; or
- (b) where B and another person are, or propose to become, participators in a joint enterprise, that other person;

and “relevant business” means a business carried on by a relevant person.

[<sup>F70</sup>(3) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

### Textual Amendments

- F70** Art. 23(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **11**

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## Other exclusions

24. Article 21 is also subject to the exclusions in articles 67 (profession or non-investment business), 68 (sale of goods and supply of services), 69 (groups and joint enterprises), 70 (sale of body corporate), 71 (employee share schemes)<sup>[F71]</sup>, 72 (overseas persons)<sup>[F72]</sup>, 72A (information society services), 72B (activities carried on by a provider of relevant goods or services) and 72D (large risks contracts where risk situated outside the EEA)].

### Textual Amendments

- F71** Words in art. 24 substituted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(5)**
- F72** Words in art. 24 substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **4(3)**

## CHAPTER VI

### ARRANGING DEALS IN INVESTMENTS

#### *The activities*

#### Arranging deals in investments

25.—(1) Making arrangements for another person (whether as principal or agent) to buy, sell, subscribe for or underwrite a particular investment which is—

- (a) a security,
- (b) a <sup>[F73]</sup>relevant investment], or
- (c) an investment of the kind specified by article 86, or article 89 so far as relevant to that article,

is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Making arrangements with a view to a person who participates in the arrangements buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting investments falling within paragraph (1)(a), (b) or (c) (whether as principal or agent) is also a specified kind of activity.

<sup>[F74]</sup>(3) Paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply to a kind of activity to which article 25D applies.]

### Textual Amendments

- F73** Words in art. 25(1) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(1)**
- F74** Art. 25(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **12**

#### <sup>[F75]</sup>Arranging regulated mortgage contracts

25A.—(1) Making arrangements—

- (a) for another person to enter into a regulated mortgage contract as borrower; or

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) for another person to vary the terms of a regulated mortgage contract entered into by him as borrower after the coming into force of article 61, in such a way as to vary his obligations under that contract,

is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Making arrangements with a view to a person who participates in the arrangements entering into a regulated mortgage contract as borrower is also a specified kind of activity.

- (3) In this article “borrower” has the meaning given by article 61(3)(a)(i).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F75** Art. 25A inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), 4

#### [<sup>F76</sup>Arranging regulated home reversion plans

**25B.**—(1) Making arrangements—

- (a) for another person to enter into a regulated home reversion plan as reversion seller or as plan provider; or
- (b) for another person to vary the terms of a regulated home reversion plan, entered into on or after 6th April 2007 by him as reversion seller or as plan provider, in such a way as to vary his obligations under that plan,

is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Making arrangements with a view to a person who participates in the arrangements entering into a regulated home reversion plan as reversion seller or as plan provider is also a specified kind of activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F76** Arts. 25B, 25C inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4

#### [<sup>F76</sup>Arranging regulated home purchase plans

**25C.**—(1) Making arrangements—

- (a) for another person to enter into a regulated home purchase plan as home purchaser; or
- (b) for another person to vary the terms of a regulated home purchase plan, entered into on or after 6th April 2007 by him as home purchaser, in such a way as to vary his obligations under that plan,

is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Making arrangements with a view to a person who participates in the arrangements entering into a regulated home purchase plan as home purchaser is also a specified kind of activity.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F76** Arts. 25B, 25C inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4

#### [<sup>F77</sup>Operating a multilateral trading facility

**25D.**—(1) The operation of a multilateral trading facility on which MiFID instruments are traded is a specified kind of activity.

(2) In paragraph (1), “MiFID instrument” means any investment—

- (a) of the kind specified by article 76, 77, [<sup>F78</sup>77A,] 78, 79, 80, 81, 83, 84 or 85; or
- (b) of the kind specified by article 89 so far as relevant to an investment falling within subparagraph (a),

that is a financial instrument.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F77** Art. 25D inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), 13

**F78** Word in art. 25D(2)(a) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 5(b)**

#### [<sup>F79</sup>Arranging regulated sale and rent back agreements

**25E.**—(1) Making arrangements—

- (a) for another person to enter into a regulated sale and rent back agreement as an agreement seller or as an agreement provider; or
- (b) for another person (“A”) to vary the terms of a regulated sale and rent back agreement, entered into on or after 1st July 2009 by A as agreement seller or agreement provider, in such a way as to vary A’s obligations under that agreement,

is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Making arrangements with a view to a person who participates in the arrangements entering into a regulated sale and rent back agreement as agreement seller or agreement provider is also a specified kind of activity.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F79** Art. 25E inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 4

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Exclusions

### Arrangements not causing a deal

26. There are excluded from [F80]articles 25(1), 25A(1), 25B(1) [F81], 25C(1) and 25E(1)] arrangements which do not or would not bring about the transaction to which the arrangements relate.

#### Textual Amendments

**F80** Words in art. 26 substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 5

**F81** Words in art. 26 substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 5

### Enabling parties to communicate

27. A person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by [F82]article 25(2), 25A(2), 25B(2) [F83], 25C(2) or 25 E(2)] merely by providing means by which one party to a transaction (or potential transaction) is able to communicate with other such parties.

#### Textual Amendments

**F82** Words in art. 27 substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 6

**F83** Words in art. 27 substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 6

### Arranging transactions to which the arranger is a party

28.—(1) There are excluded from article 25(1) any arrangements for a transaction into which the person making the arrangements enters or is to enter as principal or as agent for some other person.

(2) There are excluded from article 25(2) any arrangements which a person makes with a view to transactions into which he enters or is to enter as principal or as agent for some other person.

[F84](3) But the exclusions in paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply to arrangements made for or with a view to a transaction which relates to a contract of insurance, unless the person making the arrangements either—

- (a) is the only policyholder; or
- (b) as a result of the transaction, would become the only policyholder.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F84** Art. 28(3) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), 5(2)

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### [<sup>F85</sup>Arranging contracts [<sup>F86</sup>, plans or agreements] to which the arranger is a party

**28A.**—(1) There are excluded from [<sup>F87</sup>articles 25A(1), 25B(1) [<sup>F88</sup>, 25C(1) and 25E(1)]] any arrangements—

- (a) for a [<sup>F89</sup>contract [<sup>F90</sup>, plan or agreement]] into which the person making the arrangements enters or is to enter; or
- (b) for a variation of a [<sup>F89</sup>contract [<sup>F90</sup>, plan or agreement]] to which that person is (or is to become) a party.

(2) There are excluded from [<sup>F91</sup>articles 25A(2), 25B(2) [<sup>F92</sup>, 25C(2) and 25E(2)]] any arrangements which a person makes with a view to contracts [<sup>F93</sup>, plans or agreements] into which he enters or is to enter.]

#### Textual Amendments

- F85** Art. 28A inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), 7
- F86** Words in art. 28A title substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7(1)
- F87** Words in art. 28A(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7(2)(a)(i)
- F88** Words in art. 28A(1) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7(2)(a)(i)
- F89** Words in art. 28A(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7(2)(a)(ii)
- F90** Words in art. 28A(1) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7(2)(a)(ii)
- F91** Words in art. 28A(2) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7(2)(b)(i)
- F92** Words in art. 28A(2) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7(2)(b)(i)
- F93** Words in art. 28A(2) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 7(2)(b)(ii)

### Arranging deals with or through authorised persons

**29.**—(1) There are excluded from [<sup>F94</sup>articles 25(1) and (2), 25A(1) and (2), 25B(1) and (2) [<sup>F95</sup>, 25C(1) and (2) and 25E(1) and (2)]] arrangements made by a person (“A”) who is not an authorised person for or with a view to a transaction which is or is to be entered into by a person (“the client”) with or through an authorised person if—

- (a) the transaction is or is to be entered into on advice to the client by an authorised person; or
- (b) it is clear, in all the circumstances, that the client, in his capacity as an [<sup>F96</sup>investor, borrower, reversion seller, plan provider, home purchaser, agreement provider or (as the



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

case may be) agreement seller], is not seeking and has not sought advice from A as to the merits of the client's entering into the transaction (or, if the client has sought such advice, A has declined to give it but has recommended that the client seek such advice from an authorised person).

[<sup>F97</sup>(2) But the exclusion in paragraph (1) does not apply if—

- (a) the transaction relates, or would relate, to a contract of insurance; or
- (b) A receives from any person other than the client any pecuniary reward or other advantage, for which he does not account to the client, arising out of his making the arrangements.]

[<sup>F98</sup>(3) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F94** Words in art. 29(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(a)**
- F95** Words in art. 29(1) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(a)**
- F96** Words in art. 29(1)(b) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **8(b)**
- F97** Art. 29(2) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(3)**
- F98** Art. 29(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C7** Art. 29 modified (31.10.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Interim Permissions\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3374\)](#), art. 1, **Sch. para. 11** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C8** Art. 29 modified (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Mortgages\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2615\)](#), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. para. 11** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C9** Art. 29 modified (14.1.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(General Insurance Intermediaries\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/3351\)](#), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. para. 10(2)** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C10** Art. 29 modified (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9**
- C11** Art. 29 modified (6.4.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), art. 1(3), **Sch. para. 12** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C12** Art. 29 modified (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 8**

#### [<sup>F99</sup>Arrangements made in the course of administration by authorised person

**29A.—**[

[<sup>F100</sup>(1)] A person who is not an authorised person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 25A(1)(b) as a result of—

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) anything done by an authorised person (“B”) in relation to a regulated mortgage contract which B is administering pursuant to an arrangement of the kind mentioned in article 62(a); or
- (b) anything A does in connection with the administration of a regulated mortgage contract in circumstances falling within article 62(b).

[  
<sup>F101</sup>(2) A person who is not an authorised person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 25B(1)(b) as a result of—

- (a) anything done by an authorised person (“B”) in relation to a regulated home reversion plan which B is administering pursuant to an arrangement of the kind mentioned in article 63C(a); or
- (b) anything A does in connection with the administration of a regulated home reversion plan in circumstances falling within article 63C(b).

(3) A person who is not an authorised person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 25C(1)(b) as a result of—

- (a) anything done by an authorised person (“B”) in relation to a regulated home purchase plan which B is administering pursuant to an arrangement of the kind mentioned in article 63G(a); or
- (b) anything A does in connection with the administration of a regulated home purchase plan in circumstances falling within article 63G(b).]

[  
<sup>F102</sup>(4) A person who is not an authorised person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 25E(1)(b) as a result of—

- (a) anything done by an authorised person (“B”) in relation to a regulated sale and rent back agreement which B is administering pursuant to an arrangement of the kind mentioned in article 63K(a); or
- (b) anything A does in connection with the administration of a regulated sale and rent back agreement in circumstances falling within article 63K(b).]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F99** Art. 29A inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **9**
- F100** Art. 29A(1): art. 29A renumbered as art. 29A(1) (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **9(a)**
- F101** Art. 29A(2)(3) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **9(b)**
- F102** Art. 29A(4) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **9**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C13** Art. 29A(2)(a) applied (with modifications) (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 10**

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- C14** Art. 29A(3)(a) applied (with modifications) (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 10**
- C15** Art. 29A(4)(a) modified (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 9**

### Arranging transactions in connection with lending on the security of insurance policies

**30.**—(1) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2) arrangements made by a money-lender under which either—

- [<sup>F103</sup>(a) a relevant authorised person or a person acting on his behalf will introduce to the money-lender persons with whom the relevant authorised person has entered, or proposes to enter, into a relevant transaction, or will advise such persons to approach the money-lender, with a view to the money-lender lending money on the security of any contract effected pursuant to a relevant transaction;]
- (b) a relevant authorised person gives an assurance to the money-lender as to the amount which, on the security of any contract effected pursuant to a relevant transaction, will or may be received by the money-lender should the money-lender lend money to a person introduced to him pursuant to the arrangements.

(2) In paragraph (1)—

“money-lender” means a person who is—

- (a) a money-lending company within the meaning of [<sup>F104</sup>section 209 of the Companies Act 2006];
- (b) a body corporate incorporated under the law of, or of any part of, the United Kingdom relating to building societies; or
- (c) a person whose ordinary business includes the making of loans or the giving of guarantees in connection with loans;

“relevant authorised person” means an authorised person who has permission to effect [<sup>F105</sup>contracts of insurance] or to sell investments of the kind specified by article 89, so far as relevant to such contracts;

“relevant transaction” means the effecting of a [<sup>F106</sup>contract of insurance] or the sale of an investment of the kind specified by article 89, so far as relevant to such contracts.

[<sup>F107</sup>(3) This article is subject to article 4(4A).]

### Textual Amendments

- F103** Art. 30(1)(a) substituted (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(a), **5**
- F104** Words in art. 30(2)(a) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(4)**
- F105** Words in art. 30(2) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(4)(a)**
- F106** Words in art. 30(2) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(4)(b)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F107** Art. 30(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **15**

### Arranging the acceptance of debentures in connection with loans

**31.**—(1) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2) arrangements under which a person accepts or is to accept, whether as principal or agent, an instrument creating or acknowledging indebtedness in respect of any loan, credit, guarantee or other similar financial accommodation or assurance which is, or is to be, made, granted or provided by that person or his principal.

(2) The reference in paragraph (1) to a person accepting an instrument includes a reference to a person becoming a party to an instrument otherwise than as a debtor or a surety.

### Provision of finance

**32.** There are excluded from article 25(2) arrangements having as their sole purpose the provision of finance to enable a person to buy, sell, subscribe for or underwrite investments.

### Introducing

**33.** There are excluded from <sup>F108</sup>articles 25(2), 25A(2), 25B(2) <sup>F109</sup>, 25C(2) and 25E(2)] arrangements where—

- (a) they are arrangements under which persons (“clients”) will be introduced to another person;
- (b) the person to whom introductions are to be made is—
  - (i) an authorised person;
  - (ii) an exempt person acting in the course of a business comprising a regulated activity in relation to which he is exempt; or
  - (iii) a person who is not unlawfully carrying on regulated activities in the United Kingdom and whose ordinary business involves him in engaging in an activity of the kind specified by any of articles 14, 21, 25, <sup>F110</sup>25A, <sup>F111</sup>25B, 25C, <sup>F112</sup>25E,] 37 <sup>F113</sup>, 39A] 40, 45, 51, <sup>F114</sup>52, 53] <sup>F115</sup>, 53A, 53B <sup>F116</sup>, 53C and 53D]] (or, so far as relevant to any of those articles, article 64), or would do so apart from any exclusion from any of those articles made by this Order; <sup>F117</sup> ...
- (c) the introduction is made with a view to the provision of independent advice or the independent exercise of discretion in relation to investments generally or in relation to any class of investments to which the arrangements relate <sup>F118</sup>; and
- (d) the arrangements are made with a view to a person entering into a transaction which does not relate to a contract of insurance.]

### Textual Amendments

**F108** Words in art. 33 substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **10(a)**

**F109** Words in art. 33 substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **10(a)**

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F110** Words in art. 33(b)(iii) inserted (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **10(b)(i)**
- F111** Words in art. 33(b)(iii) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **10(b)(i)**
- F112** Word in art. 33(b)(iii) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **10(b)(i)**
- F113** Word in art. 33(b)(iii) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **5(5)(a)**
- F114** Words in art. 33(b)(iii) substituted (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **10(b)(ii)**
- F115** Words in art. 33(b)(iii) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **10(b)(ii)**
- F116** Words in art. 33(b)(iii) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **10(b)(ii)**
- F117** Word in art. 33(b)(iii) omitted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **5(5)(b)**
- F118** Art. 33(d) and preceding word inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **5(5)(c)**

**[<sup>F119</sup>Introducing to authorised persons etc.**

**33A.—**(1) There are excluded from article 25A(2) arrangements where—

- (a) they are arrangements under which a client is introduced to a person (“N”) who is—
- (i) an authorised person who has permission to carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by any of articles 25A, 53A, and 61(1),
  - (ii) an appointed representative who may carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by either of articles 25A and 53A without contravening the general prohibition, or
  - (iii) an overseas person who carries on activities specified by any of articles 25A, 53A and 61(1); and
- (b) the conditions mentioned in paragraph (2) are satisfied.

**[<sup>F120</sup>(1A) There are excluded from article 25B(2) arrangements where—**

- (a) they are arrangements under which a client is introduced to a person (“N”) who is—
- (i) an authorised person who has permission to carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by any of articles 25B, 53B and 63B(1),
  - (ii) an appointed representative who may carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by either of articles 25B and 53B without contravening the general prohibition, or
  - (iii) an overseas person who carries on activities specified by any of articles 25B, 53B and 63B(1); and

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) the conditions mentioned in paragraph (2) are satisfied.
- (1B) There are excluded from article 25C(2) arrangements where—
  - (a) they are arrangements under which a client is introduced to a person (“N”) who is—
    - (i) an authorised person who has permission to carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by any of articles 25C, 53C and 63F(1),
    - (ii) an appointed representative who may carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by either of articles 25C and 53C without contravening the general prohibition, or
    - (iii) an overseas person who carries on activities specified by any of articles 25C, 53C and 63F(1); and
  - (b) the conditions mentioned in paragraph (2) are satisfied.]
- <sup>F121</sup>(1C) There are excluded from article 25E(2) arrangements where—
  - (a) they are arrangements under which a client is introduced to a person (“N”) who is—
    - (i) an authorised person who has permission to carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by any of articles 25E, 53D and 63J(1),
    - (ii) an appointed representative who may carry on a regulated activity of the kind specified by either of articles 25E or 53D without contravening the general prohibition, or
    - (iii) an overseas person who carries on activities specified by any of articles 25E, 53D and 63J(1); and
  - (b) the conditions mentioned in paragraph (2) are satisfied.]
- (2) Those conditions are—
  - (a) that the person making the introduction (“P”) does not receive any money, other than money payable to P on his own account, paid by the client for or in connection with any transaction which the client enters into with or through N as a result of the introduction; and
  - (b) that before making the introduction P discloses to the client such of the information mentioned in paragraph (3) as applies to P.
- (3) That information is—
  - (a) that P is a member of the same group as N;
  - (b) details of any payment which P will receive from N, by way of fee or commission, for introducing the client to N;
  - (c) an indication of any other reward or advantage received or to be received by P that arises out of his introducing clients to N.
- <sup>F122</sup>(4) In this article, “client” means—
  - (a) for the purposes of paragraph (1), a borrower within the meaning given by article 61(3)(a) (i), or a person who is or may be contemplating entering into a regulated mortgage contract as such a borrower;
  - (b) for the purposes of paragraph (1A), a reversion seller, a plan provider or a person who is or may be contemplating entering into a regulated home reversion plan as a reversion seller or as a plan provider;
  - (c) for the purposes of paragraph (1B), a home purchaser or a person who is or may be contemplating entering into a regulated home purchase plan as a home purchaser<sup>F123</sup>;

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (d) for the purposes of paragraph (1C), an agreement provider, an agreement seller or a person who is or may be contemplating entering into a regulated sale and rent back agreement as an agreement provider or agreement seller.]]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F119** Art. 33A inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **11**
- F120** Art. 33A(1A)(1B) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **11(a)**
- F121** Art. 33A(1C) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **11(a)**
- F122** Art. 33A(4) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **11(b)**
- F123** Art. 33A(4)(d) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **11(b)**

#### Arrangements for the issue of shares etc.

34.—(1) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2)—

- (a) arrangements made by a company for the purposes of issuing its own shares or share warrants; and
- (b) arrangements made by any person for the purposes of issuing his own debentures or debenture warrants;

and for the purposes of article 25(1) and (2), a company is not, by reason of issuing its own shares or share warrants, and a person is not, by reason of issuing his own debentures or debenture warrants, to be treated as selling them.

(2) In paragraph (1), “company”, “shares”, “debentures”, “share warrants” and “debenture warrants” have the meanings given by article 18(2).

#### International securities self-regulating organisations

35.—(1) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2) any arrangements made for the purposes of carrying out the functions of a body or association which is approved under this article as an international securities self-regulating organisation, whether the arrangements are made by the organisation itself or by a person acting on its behalf.

(2) The Treasury may approve as an international securities self-regulating organisation any body corporate or unincorporated association with respect to which the conditions mentioned in paragraph (3) appear to them to be met if, having regard to such matters affecting international trade, overseas earnings and the balance of payments or otherwise as they consider relevant, it appears to them that to do so would be desirable and not result in any undue risk to investors.

(3) The conditions are that—

- (a) the body or association does not have its head office in the United Kingdom;
- (b) the body or association is not eligible for recognition under section 287 or 288 of the Act (applications by investment exchanges and clearing houses) on the ground that (whether or not it has applied, and whether or not it would be eligible on other grounds) it is unable

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- to satisfy the requirements of one or both of paragraphs (a) and (b) of section 292(3) of the Act (requirements for overseas investment exchanges and overseas clearing houses);
- (c) the body or association is able and willing to co-operate with the Authority by the sharing of information and in other ways;
  - (d) adequate arrangements exist for co-operation between the Authority and those responsible for the supervision of the body or association in the country or territory in which its head office is situated;
  - (e) the body or association has a membership composed of persons falling within any of the following categories, that is to say, authorised persons, exempt persons, and persons whose head offices are outside the United Kingdom and whose ordinary business involves them in engaging in activities which are activities of a kind specified by this Order (or would be apart from any exclusion made by this Part); and
  - (f) the body or association facilitates and regulates the activity of its members in the conduct of international securities business.
- (4) In paragraph (3)(f), "international securities business" means the business of buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting investments (or agreeing to do so), either as principal or agent, where—
- (a) the investments are securities or <sup>F124</sup>[relevant investments] and are of a kind which, by their nature, and the manner in which the business is conducted, may be expected normally to be bought or dealt in by persons sufficiently expert to understand the risks involved; and
  - (b) either the transaction is international or each of the parties may be expected to be indifferent to the location of the other;
- and, for the purposes of this definition, it is irrelevant that the investments may ultimately be bought otherwise than in the course of such business by persons not so expert.
- (5) Any approval under this article is to be given by notice in writing; and the Treasury may by a further notice in writing withdraw any such approval if for any reason it appears to them that it is not appropriate to it to continue in force.

#### Textual Amendments

**F124** Words in art. 35(4)(a) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **5(6)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C16** Art. 35 extended (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Transitional Provisions\) \(Authorised Persons etc.\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/2636\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 2(1), **80**; [S.I. 2001/3538](#), art. 2(1)

#### Other exclusions

**36.**—<sup>F125</sup>[1] Article 25 is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 67 (profession or non-investment business), 68 (sale of goods and supply of services), 69 (groups and joint enterprises), 70 (sale of body corporate), 71 (employee share schemes) <sup>F126</sup>[, 72 (overseas persons) <sup>F127</sup>, 72A (information society services), 72B (activities carried on by a provider of relevant goods or services), 72C (provision of information about contracts of insurance on an incidental basis) and 72D (large risks contracts where risk situated outside the EEA)].



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F128</sup>(2) [<sup>F129</sup>Articles 25A, 25B [<sup>F130</sup>, 25C and 25E] are] also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 67 (profession or non-investment business), 72 (overseas persons) and 72A (information society services).]

[<sup>F131</sup>(3) Article 25D is also subject to the exclusion in article 72 (overseas persons).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F125** Art. 36(1): art. 36 renumbered as art. 36(1) (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **12(a)**
- F126** Words in art. 36 substituted (21.8.2002) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/1776), arts. 1, **3(6)**
- F127** Words in art. 36(1) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **5(7)**
- F128** Art. 36(2) inserted (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **12(b)**
- F129** Words in art. 36(2) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **12**
- F130** Words in art. 36(2) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **12**
- F131** Art. 36(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **16**

## CHAPTER VII

### MANAGING INVESTMENTS

#### *The activity*

#### Managing investments

**37.** Managing assets belonging to another person, in circumstances involving the exercise of discretion, is a specified kind of activity if—

- (a) the assets consist of or include any investment which is a security or a contractually based investment; or
- (b) the arrangements for their management are such that the assets may consist of or include such investments, and either the assets have at any time since 29th April 1988 done so, or the arrangements have at any time (whether before or after that date) been held out as arrangements under which the assets would do so.

#### *Exclusions*

#### Attorneys

**38.**—[<sup>F132</sup>(1)] A person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 37 if—

- (a) he is a person appointed to manage the assets in question under a power of attorney; and
- (b) all routine or day-to-day decisions, so far as relating to investments of a kind mentioned in article 37(a), are taken on behalf of that person by—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) an authorised person with permission to carry on activities of the kind specified by article 37; <sup>F133</sup> ...
- (ii) a person who is an exempt person in relation to activities of that kind [<sup>F134</sup>; or
- (iii) an overseas person.]

[<sup>F135</sup>(2) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F132** Art. 38(1): art. 38 renumbered as art. 38(1) (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **17(a)**
- F133** Word in art. 38(b) omitted (1.12.2001) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(a), **6(a)**
- F134** Art. 38(b)(iii) and word inserted (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(a), **6(b)**
- F135** Art. 38(2) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **17(b)**

#### Other exclusions

**39.** Article 37 is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 68 (sale of goods and supply of services)[<sup>F136</sup>, 69 (groups and joint enterprises)][<sup>F137</sup>, 72A (information society services) and 72C (provision of information about contracts of insurance on an incidental basis)].

#### Textual Amendments

- F136** Words in art. 39 substituted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(7)**
- F137** Words in art. 39 substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **6**

## [<sup>F138</sup>CHAPTER VIIA

### ASSISTING IN THE ADMINISTRATION AND PERFORMANCE OF A CONTRACT OF INSURANCE

#### Textual Amendments

- F138** Pt. 2 Ch. 7A inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **7**

#### *The activity*

#### Assisting in the administration and performance of a contract of insurance

**39A.** Assisting in the administration and performance of a contract of insurance is a specified kind of activity.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Exclusions

### Claims management on behalf of an insurer etc.

**39B.—(1)** A person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 39A if he acts in the course of carrying on the activity of—

- (a) expert appraisal;
- (b) loss adjusting on behalf of a relevant insurer; or
- (c) managing claims on behalf of a relevant insurer,

and that activity is carried on in the course of carrying on any profession or business.

(2) In this article—

(a) “relevant insurer” means—

- (i) a person who has Part IV permission to carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 10;
- (ii) a person to whom the general prohibition does not apply by virtue of section 316(1) (a) of the Act (members of the Society of Lloyd's);
- (iii) an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(d) of Schedule 3 to the Act (insurance undertaking); or
- (iv) a relevant reinsurer;

(b) “relevant reinsurer” means a person whose main business consists of accepting risks ceded by—

- (i) a person falling within sub-paragraph (i), (ii) or (iii) of the definition of “relevant insurer”; <sup>F139</sup> ...
- <sup>F140</sup>(ii) an EEA firm falling within paragraph 5(da) of Schedule 3 to the Act (reinsurance undertaking); or
- (iii) a person established outside the United Kingdom and not falling within paragraph (ii) who carries on an activity of the kind specified by article 10 by way of business.]

### Textual Amendments

**F139** Word in art. 39B(2)(b)(i) omitted (10.12.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Reinsurance Directive\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3254\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)(a)**

**F140** Art. 39B(2)(b)(ii)(iii) substituted for art. 39B(2)(b)(ii) (10.12.2007) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Reinsurance Directive\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3254\)](#), arts. 1, **2(2)(b)**

### Other exclusions

**39C.** Article 39A is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 67 (profession or non-investment business), 72A (information society services), 72B (activities carried on by a provider of relevant goods or services), 72C (provision of information about contracts of insurance on an incidental basis) and 72D (large risks contracts where risk situated outside the EEA).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## CHAPTER VIII

### SAFEGUARDING AND ADMINISTERING INVESTMENTS

#### *The activity*

#### **Safeguarding and administering investments**

**40.**—(1) The activity consisting of both—

- (a) the safeguarding of assets belonging to another, and
- (b) the administration of those assets,

or arranging for one or more other persons to carry on that activity, is a specified kind of activity if the condition in sub-paragraph (a) or (b) of paragraph (2) is met.

(2) The condition is that—

- (a) the assets consist of or include any investment which is a security or a contractually based investment; or
- (b) the arrangements for their safeguarding and administration are such that the assets may consist of or include such investments, and either the assets have at any time since 1st June 1997 done so, or the arrangements have at any time (whether before or after that date) been held out as ones under which such investments would be safeguarded and administered.

(3) For the purposes of this article—

- (a) it is immaterial that title to the assets safeguarded and administered is held in uncertificated form;
- (b) it is immaterial that the assets safeguarded and administered may be transferred to another person, subject to a commitment by the person safeguarding and administering them, or arranging for their safeguarding and administration, that they will be replaced by equivalent assets at some future date or when so requested by the person to whom they belong.

#### *Exclusions*

#### **Acceptance of responsibility by third party**

**41.**—(1) There are excluded from article 40 any activities which a person carries on pursuant to arrangements which—

- (a) are ones under which a qualifying custodian undertakes to the person to whom the assets belong a responsibility in respect of the assets which is no less onerous than the qualifying custodian would have if the qualifying custodian were safeguarding and administering the assets; and
- (b) are operated by the qualifying custodian in the course of carrying on in the United Kingdom an activity of the kind specified by article 40.

(2) In paragraph (1), “qualifying custodian” means a person who is—

- (a) an authorised person who has permission to carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 40, or
- (b) an exempt person acting in the course of a business comprising a regulated activity in relation to which he is exempt.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Introduction to qualifying custodians

**42.**—(1) There are excluded from article 40 any arrangements pursuant to which introductions are made by a person (“P”) to a qualifying custodian with a view to the qualifying custodian providing in the United Kingdom a service comprising an activity of the kind specified by article 40, where the qualifying person (or other person who is to safeguard and administer the assets in question) is not connected with P.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)—

- (a) “qualifying custodian” has the meaning given by article 41(2); and
- (b) a person is connected with P if either he is a member of the same group as P, or P is remunerated by him.

### Activities not constituting administration

**43.** The following activities do not constitute the administration of assets for the purposes of article 40—

- (a) providing information as to the number of units or the value of any assets safeguarded;
- (b) converting currency;
- (c) receiving documents relating to an investment solely for the purpose of onward transmission to, from or at the direction of the person to whom the investment belongs.

### Other exclusions

**44.** Article 40 is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 67 (profession or non-investment business), 68 (sale of goods and supply of services), 69 (groups and joint enterprises)<sup>[F141]</sup>, 71 (employee share schemes)<sup>[F142]</sup>, 72A (information society services) and 72C (provision of information about contracts of insurance on an incidental basis)].

#### Textual Amendments

**F141** Words in art. 44 substituted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(8)**

**F142** Words in art. 44 substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **8**

## CHAPTER IX

### SENDING DEMATERIALIZED INSTRUCTIONS

#### *The activities*

### Sending dematerialised instructions

**45.**—(1) Sending, on behalf of another person, dematerialised instructions relating to a security <sup>[F143]</sup> or a contractually based investment] is a specified kind of activity, where those instructions are sent by means of a relevant system in respect of which an Operator is approved under the <sup>[F144]</sup>2001] Regulations.

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(2) Causing dematerialised instructions relating to a security [<sup>F145</sup>or a contractually based investment] to be sent [<sup>F146</sup>on behalf of another person] by means of such a system is also a specified kind of activity where the person causing them to be sent is a system-participant.

(3) In this Chapter—

[<sup>F147</sup>(a) “the 2001 Regulations” means the Uncertificated Securities Regulations 2001;]

(b) “dematerialised instruction”, “Operator”, “settlement bank” and “system-participant” have the meaning given by regulation 3 of the [<sup>F148</sup>2001] Regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

**F143** Words in art. 45(1) inserted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **13(1)(a)**

**F144** Word in art. 45(1) substituted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **13(1)(b)**

**F145** Words in art. 45(2) inserted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **13(2)**

**F146** Words in art. 45(2) inserted (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(a), **7**

**F147** Art. 45(3)(a) substituted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **13(3)(a)**

**F148** Word in art. 45(3)(b) substituted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **13(3)(b)**

#### Exclusions

##### Instructions on behalf of participating issuers

**46.** There is excluded from article 45 the act of sending, or causing to be sent, a dematerialised instruction where the person on whose behalf the instruction is sent or caused to be sent is a participating issuer within the meaning of the [<sup>F149</sup>2001] Regulations.

#### Textual Amendments

**F149** Word in art. 46 substituted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **13(4)**

##### Instructions on behalf of settlement banks

**47.** There is excluded from article 45 the act of sending, or causing to be sent, a dematerialised instruction where the person on whose behalf the instruction is sent or caused to be sent is a settlement bank in its capacity as such.

##### Instructions in connection with takeover offers

**48.—(1)** There is excluded from article 45 of the act of sending, or causing to be sent, a dematerialised instruction where the person on whose behalf the instruction is sent or caused to be sent is an offeror making a takeover offer.

(2) In this article—

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) “offeror” means, in the case of a takeover offer made by two or more persons jointly, the joint offers or any of them;
- (b) “takeover offer” means—
- (i) an offer to acquire shares (which in this sub-paragraph has the same meaning as in [F150]section 974 of the Companies Act 2006]) in a body corporate incorporated in the United Kingdom which is a takeover offer within the meaning of [F151]Chapter 3 of Part 28] of that Act (or would be such an offer if that Part of that Act applied in relation to any body corporate);
  - (ii) an offer to acquire all or substantially all the shares, or all the shares of a particular class, in a body corporate incorporated outside the United Kingdom; or
  - (iii) an offer made to all the holders of shares, or shares of a particular class, in a body corporate to acquire a specified proportion of those shares;

but in determining whether an offer falls within paragraph (ii) there are to be disregarded any shares which the offeror or any associate of his (within the meaning of [F152]section 988 of the Companies Act 2006]) holds or has contracted to acquire; and in determining whether an offer falls within paragraph (iii) the offeror, any such associate and any person whose shares the offeror or any such associate has contracted to acquire is not to be regarded as a holder of shares.

#### Textual Amendments

- F150** Words in art. 48(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2007) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Commencement No. 2, Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1093\)](#), art. 1(3), [Sch. 3 para. 8\(2\)](#)
- F151** Words in art. 48(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2007) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Commencement No. 2, Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1093\)](#), art. 1(3), [Sch. 3 para. 8\(3\)](#)
- F152** Words in art. 48(2)(b) substituted (6.4.2007) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Commencement No. 2, Consequential Amendments, Transitional Provisions and Savings\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/1093\)](#), art. 1(3), [Sch. 3 para. 8\(4\)](#)

#### Instructions in the course of providing a network

**49.** There is excluded from article 45 the act of sending, or causing to be sent, a dematerialised instruction as a necessary part of providing a network, the purpose of which is to carry dematerialised instructions which are at all time properly authenticated (within the meaning of the [F153]2001 Regulations).

#### Textual Amendments

- F153** Word in art. 49 substituted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), [13\(4\)](#)

#### Other exclusions

**50.** Article 45 is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.) [F154], 69 (groups and joint enterprises) and 72A (information society services)].

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

**F154** Words in art. 50 substituted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(9)**

## CHAPTER X

### COLLECTIVE INVESTMENT SCHEMES

#### *The activities*

#### **Establishing etc. a collective investment scheme**

**51.**—(1) The following are specified kinds of activity—

- (a) establishing, operating or winding up a collective investment scheme;
- (b) acting as trustee of an authorised unit trust scheme;
- (c) acting as the depositary or sole director of an open-ended investment company.

(2) In this article, “trustee”, “authorised unit trust scheme” and “depositary” have the meaning given by section 237 of the Act.

#### *[<sup>F155</sup>Exclusion*

### Textual Amendments

**F155** Art. 51A and cross-heading inserted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(10)**

#### **Information society services**

**51A.** Article 51 is subject to the exclusion in article 72A (information society services).]

## CHAPTER XI

### <sup>F156</sup>... PENSION SCHEMES

### Textual Amendments

**F156** Word in Pt. 2 Ch. 11 title omitted (1.10.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(3)**

#### *The activities*

#### **[<sup>F157</sup>Establishing etc. a pension scheme**

**52.** The following are specified kinds of activity—

- (a) establishing, operating or winding up a stakeholder pension scheme;
- (b) establishing, operating or winding up a personal pension scheme.]



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F157** Art. 52 substituted (1.10.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(4)**

#### *[<sup>F158</sup>Exclusion*

#### Textual Amendments

**F158** Art. 52A and cross-heading inserted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(11)**

### Information society services

**52A.** Article 52 is subject to the exclusion in article 72A (information society services).]

#### *[<sup>F159</sup>CHAPTER XIA*

#### PROVIDING BASIC ADVICE ON STAKEHOLDER PRODUCTS

#### Textual Amendments

**F159** Pt. 2 Ch. 11A inserted (6.4.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/2737\)](#), arts. 1(1), **3**

#### *The activity*

### Providing basic advice on stakeholder products

**52B.**—(1) Providing basic advice to a retail consumer on a stakeholder product is a specified kind of activity.

- (2) For the purposes of paragraph (1), a person (“P”) provides basic advice when—
- (a) he asks a retail consumer questions to enable him to assess whether a stakeholder product is appropriate for that consumer; and
  - (b) relying on the information provided by the retail consumer P assesses that a stakeholder product is appropriate for the retail consumer and—
    - (i) describes that product to that consumer;
    - (ii) gives a recommendation of that product to that consumer; and
  - (c) the retail consumer has indicated to P that he has understood the description and the recommendation in sub-paragraph (b).
- (3) In this article—
- “retail consumer” means any person who is advised by P on the merits of opening or buying a stakeholder product in the course of a business carried on by P and who does not receive the advice in the course of a business carried on by him;
- “stakeholder product” means—

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) an account which qualifies as a stakeholder child trust fund within the meaning given by the Child Trust Funds Regulations 2004;
- (b) [<sup>F160</sup>rights under a stakeholder pension scheme;]  
 “relevant stakeholder pension scheme” means a stakeholder pension scheme within the meaning given by section 1 of the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999 and which is subject to lifestyling, and  
 “lifestyling” means the process, applied from a date at least five years before the member’s retirement date, or, in the case of a member who joins the scheme less than five years before his retirement date, immediately after he becomes a member, and continuing until the member’s retirement date, by which an investment strategy is adopted by the trustees or manager which aims progressively to minimise the variation or potential variation in the value of the member’s rights caused by market conditions from time to time, and the words “member” and “scheme” have the same meaning as they have in the Welfare Reform and Pensions Act 1999;
- (c) an investment of a kind specified in regulations made by the Treasury.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F160** Words in art. 52B(3) substituted (6.4.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/593\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)**

## CHAPTER XII

### ADVISING ON INVESTMENTS

#### *The activity*

#### Advising on investments

- 53.** Advising a person is a specified kind of activity if the advice is—
- (a) given to the person in his capacity as an investor or potential investor, or in his capacity as agent for an investor or a potential investor; and
  - (b) advice on the merits of his doing any of the following (whether as principal or agent)—
    - (i) buying, selling, subscribing for or underwriting a particular investment which is a security or a [<sup>F161</sup>relevant investment], or
    - (ii) exercising any right conferred by such an investment to buy, sell, subscribe for or underwrite such an investment.

#### Textual Amendments

**F161** Words in art. 53(b)(i) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **9(1)**

#### [<sup>F162</sup>Advising on regulated mortgage contracts

- 53A.—**(1) Advising a person is a specified kind of activity if the advice—
- (a) is given to the person in his capacity as a borrower or potential borrower; and
  - (b) is advice on the merits of his doing any of the following—

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) entering into a particular regulated mortgage contract, or
- (ii) varying the terms of a regulated mortgage contract entered into by him after the coming into force of article 61 in such a way as to vary his obligations under that contract.

(2) In this article, “borrower” has the meaning given by article 61(3)(a)(i).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F162** Art. 53A inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **13**

#### [<sup>F163</sup> Advising on regulated home reversion plans

**53B.** Advising a person is a specified kind of activity if the advice—

- (a) is given to the person in his capacity as—
  - (i) a reversion seller or potential reversion seller, or
  - (ii) a plan provider or potential plan provider; and
- (b) is advice on the merits of his doing either of the following—
  - (i) entering into a particular regulated home reversion plan, or
  - (ii) varying the terms of a regulated home reversion plan, entered into on or after 6th April 2007 by him, in such a way as to vary his obligations under that plan.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F163** Arts. 53B, 53C inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13**

#### [<sup>F163</sup> Advising on regulated home purchase plans

**53C.** Advising a person is a specified kind of activity if the advice—

- (a) is given to the person in his capacity as a home purchaser or potential home purchaser; and
- (b) is advice on the merits of his doing either of the following—
  - (i) entering into a particular regulated home purchase plan, or
  - (ii) varying the terms of a regulated home purchase plan, entered into on or after 6th April 2007 by him, in such a way as to vary his obligations under that plan.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F163** Arts. 53B, 53C inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13**

#### [<sup>F164</sup> Advising on regulated sale and rent back agreements

**53D.** Advising a person is a specified kind of activity if the advice—

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) is given to the person (“A”) in A’s capacity as—
  - (i) an agreement seller or potential agreement seller, or
  - (ii) an agreement provider or potential agreement provider; and
- (b) is advice on the merits of A doing either of the following—
  - (i) entering into a particular regulated sale and rent back agreement; or
  - (ii) varying the terms of a regulated sale and rent back agreement entered into on or after 1st July 2009 by A as agreement seller or agreement provider, in such a way so as to vary A’s obligations under that agreement.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F164** Art. 53D inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13**

#### Exclusions

##### Advice given in newspapers etc.

**54.**—(1) There is excluded from [<sup>F165</sup>articles 53, 53A, 53B [<sup>F166</sup>, 53C and 53D]] the giving of advice in writing or other legible form if the advice is contained in a newspaper, journal, magazine, or other periodical publication, or is given by way of a service comprising regularly updated news or information, if the principal purpose of the publication or service, taken as a whole and including any advertisements or other promotional material contained in it, is neither—

- (a) that of giving advice of a kind mentioned in article 53 [<sup>F167</sup>, 53A, 53B [<sup>F168</sup>, 53C or 53D,] as the case may be]; nor

[<sup>F169</sup>(b) that of leading or enabling persons—

- (i) to buy, sell, subscribe for or underwrite securities or [<sup>F170</sup>relevant investments], or (as the case may be),
- (ii) to enter as borrower into regulated mortgage contracts, or vary the terms of regulated mortgage contracts entered into by them as borrower [<sup>F171</sup>;
- (iii) to enter as reversion seller or plan provider into regulated home reversion plans, or vary the terms of regulated home reversion plans entered into by them as reversion seller or plan provider,
- (iv) to enter as home purchaser into regulated home purchase plans, or vary the terms of regulated home purchase plans entered into by them as home purchaser][<sup>F172</sup>;
- (v) to enter as agreement seller or agreement provider into regulated sale and rent back agreements, or vary the terms of regulated sale and rent back agreements entered into by them as agreement seller or agreement provider].]

(2) There is also excluded from [<sup>F173</sup>articles 53, 53A, 53B [<sup>F174</sup>, 53C and 53D]] the giving of advice in any service consisting of the broadcast or transmission of television or radio programmes, if the principal purpose of the service, taken as a whole and including any advertisements or other promotional material contained in it, is neither of those mentioned in paragraph (1)(a) and (b).

(3) The Authority may, on the application of the proprietor of any such publication or service as is mentioned in paragraph (1) or (2), certify that it is of the nature described in that paragraph, and may revoke any such certificate if it considers that it is no longer justified.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(4) A certificate given under paragraph (3) and not revoked is conclusive evidence of the matters certified.

#### Textual Amendments

- F165** Words in art. 54(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14(a)(i)**
- F166** Words in art. 54(1) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14(a)**
- F167** Words in art. 54(1)(a) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14(a)(ii)**
- F168** Words in art. 54(1)(a) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14(b)**
- F169** Art. 54(1)(b) substituted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **14(4)**
- F170** Words in art. 54(1)(b) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **9(2)**
- F171** Art. 54(1)(b)(iii)(iv) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14(a)(iii)**
- F172** Art. 54(1)(b)(v) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14(c)**
- F173** Words in art. 54(2) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14(b)**
- F174** Words in art. 54(2) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **14(d)**

#### [<sup>F175</sup> Advice given in the course of administration by authorised person

##### 54A.—[

<sup>F176</sup>(1)] A person who is not an authorised person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 53A by reason of—

- (a) anything done by an authorised person (“B”) in relation to a regulated mortgage contract which B is administering pursuant to arrangements of the kind mentioned in article 62(a); or
- (b) anything A does in connection with the administration of a regulated mortgage contract in circumstances falling within article 62(b).

[  
<sup>F177</sup>(2) A person who is not an authorised person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 53B by reason of—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) anything done by an authorised person (“B”) in relation to a regulated home reversion plan which B is administering pursuant to arrangements of the kind mentioned in article 63C(a); or
  - (b) anything A does in connection with the administration of a regulated home reversion plan in circumstances falling within article 63C(b).
- (3) A person who is not an authorised person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 53C by reason of—
- (a) anything done by an authorised person (“B”) in relation to a regulated home purchase plan which B is administering pursuant to arrangements of the kind mentioned in article 63G(a); or
  - (b) anything A does in connection with the administration of a regulated home purchase plan in circumstances falling within article 63G(b).]
- [
- <sup>F178</sup>(4) A person who is not an authorised person (“A”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 53D by reason of
- (a) anything done by an authorised person (“B”) in relation to a regulated sale and rent back agreement which B is administering pursuant to arrangements of the kind mentioned in article 63K(a); or
  - (b) anything A does in connection with the administration of a regulated sale and rent back agreement in circumstances falling within article 63K(b).]]

#### Textual Amendments

- F175** Art. 54A inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **15**
- F176** Art. 54A(1): art. 54A renumbered as art. 54A(1) (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **15(a)**
- F177** Art. 54A(2)(3) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **15(b)**
- F178** Art. 54A(4) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **15**

#### Other exclusions

**55.**—<sup>F179</sup>(1)] Article 53 is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 67, (profession or non-investment business), 68 (sale of goods and supply of services), 69 (groups and joint enterprises), 70 (sale of body corporate) <sup>F180</sup>, 72 (overseas persons)]<sup>F181</sup>, 72A (information society services), 72B (activities carried on by a provider of relevant goods or services) and 72D (large risks contracts where risk situated outside the EEA)].

<sup>F182</sup>(2) [<sup>F183</sup>Articles 53A, 53B <sup>F184</sup>, 53C and 53D] are] also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 67 (profession or non-investment business) and 72A (information society services).]

#### Textual Amendments

- F179** Art. 55(1): art.55 renumbered as art. 55(1) (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **16(a)**

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F180** Words in art. 55 substituted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(12)**
- F181** Words in art. 55(1) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **9(3)**
- F182** Art. 55(2) inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **16(b)**
- F183** Words in art. 55(2) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **16**
- F184** Words in art. 55(2) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **16**

## CHAPTER XIII

### LLOYD'S

#### *The activities*

#### **Advice on syndicate participation at Lloyd's**

**56.** Advising a person to become, or continue or cease to be, a member of a particular Lloyd's syndicate is a specified kind of activity.

#### **Managing the underwriting capacity of a Lloyd's syndicate**

**57.** Managing the underwriting capacity of a Lloyd's syndicate as a managing agent at Lloyd's is a specified kind of activity.

#### **Arranging deals in contracts of insurance written at Lloyd's**

**58.** The arranging, by the society incorporated by Lloyd's Act 1871 <sup>M21</sup> by the name of Lloyd's, of deals in contracts of insurance written at Lloyd's, is a specified kind of activity.

#### **Marginal Citations**

**M21** 1871 c. 21.

#### *[<sup>F185</sup>Exclusion*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F185** Art. 58A and cross-heading inserted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(13)**

#### **Information society services**

**58A.** Articles 56 to 58 are subject to the exclusion in article 72A (information society services).]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## CHAPTER XIV

### FUNERAL PLAN CONTRACTS

#### *The activity*

#### **Funeral plan contracts**

- 59.**—(1) Entering as provider into a funeral plan contract is a specified kind of activity.
- (2) A “funeral plan contract” is a contract (other than one excluded by article 60) under which—
- (a) a person (“the customer”) makes one or more payments to another person (“the provider”); and
  - (b) the provider undertakes to provide, or secure that another person provides, a funeral in the United Kingdom for the customer (or some other person who is living at the date when the contract is entered into) on his death;

unless, at the time of entering into the contract, the customer and the provider intend or expect the funeral to occur within one month.

#### **Commencement Information**

**II** Art. 59 in force at 1.1.2002, see [art. 2\(2\)\(a\)](#)

#### *[<sup>F186</sup>Exclusions]*

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F186** Art. 60 cross-heading substituted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(14)**

#### **Plans covered by insurance or trust arrangements**

- 60.**—(1) There is excluded from article 59 any contract under which—
- (a) the provider undertakes to secure that sums paid by the customer under the contract will be applied towards a contract of whole life insurance on the life of the customer (or other person for whom the funeral is to be provided), effected and carried out by an authorised person who has permission to effect and carry out such contracts of insurance, for the purpose of providing the funeral; or
  - (b) the provider undertakes to secure that sums paid by the customer under the contract will be held on trust for the purpose of providing the funeral, and that the following requirements are or will be met with respect to the trust—
    - (i) the trust must be established by a written instrument;
    - (ii) more than half of the trustees must be unconnected with the provider;
    - (iii) the trustees must appoint, or have appointed, an independent fund manager who is an authorised person who has permission to carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 37, and who is a person who is unconnected with the provider, to manage the assets of the trust;



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (iv) annual accounts must be prepared, and audited by a person who is eligible for appointment as a <sup>F187</sup>statutory auditor under Part 42 of the Companies Act 2006], with respect to the assets and liabilities of the trust; and
- (v) the assets and liabilities of the trust must, at least once every three years, be determined, calculated and verified by an actuary who is a Fellow of the Institute of Actuaries or of the Faculty of Actuaries.

(2) For the purposes of paragraph (1)(b)(ii) and (iii), a person is unconnected with the provider if he is a person other than—

- (a) the provider;
- (b) a member of the same group as the provider;
- (c) a director, other officer or employee of the provider, or of any member of the same group as the provider;
- (d) a partner of the provider;
- (e) a close relative of a person falling within sub-paragraph (a), (c) or (d); or
- (f) an agent of any person falling within sub-paragraphs (a) to (e).

#### Textual Amendments

**F187** Words in art. 60(1)(b)(iv) substituted (6.4.2008) by virtue of [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments etc\) Order 2008 \(S.I. 2008/948\)](#), art. 2(2), **Sch. 1 para. 1(tt)** (with arts. 6, 11, 12)

#### Commencement Information

**I2** Art. 60 in force at 1.1.2002, see art. 2(2)(a)

### <sup>F188</sup>Information society services

**60A.** Article 59 is subject to the exclusion in article 72A (information society services).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F188** Art. 60A inserted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(15)**

## CHAPTER XV

### REGULATED MORTGAGE CONTRACTS

#### *The activities*

#### Regulated mortgage contracts

**61.—**(1) Entering into a regulated mortgage contract as lender is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Administering a regulated mortgage contract is also a specified kind of activity, where the contract was entered into <sup>F189</sup>by way of business] after the coming into force of this article.

(3) In this Chapter—

<sup>F190</sup>(a) a contract is a “regulated mortgage contract” if, at the time it is entered into, the following conditions are met—

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (i) the contract is one under which a person (“the lender”) provides credit to an individual or to trustees (“the borrower”);
  - (ii) the contract provides for the obligation of the borrower to repay to be secured by a first legal mortgage on land (other than timeshare accommodation) in the United Kingdom;
  - (iii) at least 40% of that land is used, or is intended to be used, as or in connection with a dwelling by the borrower or (in the case of credit provided to trustees) by an individual who is a beneficiary of the trust, or by a related person;
- [<sup>F191</sup>but such a contract is not a regulated mortgage contract if it is a regulated home purchase plan;]
- (b) “administering” a regulated mortgage contract means either or both of—
    - (i) notifying the borrower of changes in interest rates or payments due under the contract, or of other matters of which the contract requires him to be notified; and
    - (ii) taking any necessary steps for the purposes of collecting or recovering payments due under the contract from the borrower;
 but a person is not to be treated as administering a regulated mortgage contract merely because he has, or exercises, a right to take action for the purposes of enforcing the contract (or to require that such action is or is not taken);
  - (c) “credit” includes a cash loan, and any other form of financial accommodation.
- (4) For the purposes of [<sup>F192</sup>paragraph 3(a)]—
- (a) a “first legal mortgage” means a legal mortgage ranking in priority ahead of all other mortgages (if any) affecting the land in question, where “mortgage” includes charge and (in Scotland) a heritable security;
  - (b) the area of any land which comprises a building or other structure containing two or more storeys is to be taken to be the aggregate of the floor areas of each of those storeys;
  - (c) “related person”, in relation to the borrower or (in the case of credit provided to trustees) a beneficiary of the trust, means—
    - (i) that person’s spouse [<sup>F193</sup>or civil partner];
    - (ii) a person (whether or not of the opposite sex) whose relationship with that person has the characteristics of the relationship between husband and wife; or
    - (iii) that person’s parent, brother, sister, child, grandparent or grandchild; and
  - [<sup>F194</sup>(d) “timeshare accommodation” means overnight accommodation which is the subject of a timeshare contract within the meaning of the Timeshare, Holiday Products, Resale and Exchange Contracts Regulations 2010.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F189** Words in art. 61(2) inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), **8(a)**

**F190** Art. 61(3)(a) substituted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), **8(b)**

**F191** Words in art. 61(3)(a) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **17**

**F192** Words in art. 61(4) substituted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(1)(b), **8(c)**

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F193** Words in art. 61(4)(c)(i) inserted (5.12.2005) by [The Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Amendments to Subordinate Legislation\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2114\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 16 para. 1(3)**

**F194** Art. 61(4)(d) substituted (23.2.2011) by [The Timeshare, Holiday Products, Resale and Exchange Contracts Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/2960\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 6 para. 7(2)** (with Sch. 7 para. 4)

**Commencement Information**

**I3** Art. 61 in force at 31.10.2004, see art. 1(2)(b) (as read with Treasury notice dated 9.7.2003)

*Exclusions*

**Arranging administration by authorised person**

**62.** A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 61(2) in relation to a regulated mortgage contract where he—

- (a) arranges for another person, being an authorised person with permission to carry on an activity of that kind, to administer the contract; or
- (b) administers the contract himself during a period of not more than one month beginning with the day on which any such arrangement comes to an end.

**Commencement Information**

**I4** Art. 62 in force at 31.10.2004, see art. 1(2)(b) (as read with Treasury notice dated 9.7.2003)

**Administration pursuant to agreement with authorised person**

**63.** A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 61(2) in relation to a regulated mortgage contract where he administers the contract pursuant to an agreement with an authorised person who has permission to carry on an activity of that kind.

**Commencement Information**

**I5** Art. 63 in force at 31.10.2004, see art. 1(2)(b) (as read with Treasury notice dated 9.7.2003)

**[<sup>F195</sup>Other exclusions**

**63A.** Article 61 is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 72 (overseas persons) and 72A (information society services).]

**Textual Amendments**

**F195** Art. 63A substituted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **17**

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## [<sup>F196</sup>Chapter XVA

### Regulated Home Reversion Plans

#### Textual Amendments

**F196** Pt. 2 Chs. 15A, 15B inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **18**

#### *The activities*

#### **Entering into and administering regulated home reversion plans**

**63B.**—(1) Entering into a regulated home reversion plan as plan provider is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Administering a regulated home reversion plan is also a specified kind of activity where the plan was entered into on or after 6th April 2007.

(3) In this Chapter—

- (a) a “regulated home reversion plan” is an arrangement comprised in one or more instruments or agreements, in relation to which the following conditions are met at the time it is entered into—
- (i) the arrangement is one under which a person (the “plan provider”) buys all or part of a qualifying interest in land (other than timeshare accommodation) in the United Kingdom from an individual or trustees (the “reversion seller”);
  - (ii) the reversion seller (if he is an individual) or an individual who is a beneficiary of the trust (if the reversion seller is a trustee), or a related person, is entitled under the arrangement to occupy at least 40% of the land in question as or in connection with a dwelling, and intends to do so; and
  - (iii) the arrangement specifies one or more qualifying termination events, on the occurrence of which that entitlement will end;
- (b) “administering” a regulated home reversion plan means any of—
- (i) notifying the reversion seller of changes in payments due under the plan, or of other matters of which the plan requires him to be notified;
  - (ii) taking any necessary steps for the purposes of making payments to the reversion seller under the plan; and
  - (iii) taking any necessary steps for the purposes of collecting or recovering payments due under the plan from the reversion seller,

but a person is not to be treated as administering a regulated home reversion plan merely because he has, or exercises, a right to take action for the purposes of enforcing the plan (or to require that such action is or is not taken).

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (3)—

- (a) the reference to a “qualifying interest” in land—
- (i) in relation to land in England or Wales, is to an estate in fee simple absolute or a term of years absolute, whether subsisting at law or in equity;
  - (ii) in relation to land in Scotland, is to the interest of an owner in land or the tenant’s right over or interest in a property subject to a lease;

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (iii) in relation to land in Northern Ireland, is to any freehold estate or any leasehold estate, whether subsisting at law or in equity;
  - (b) “timeshare accommodation” has the meaning given by section 1 of the Timeshare Act 1992;
  - (c) “related person” in relation to the reversion seller or, where the reversion seller is a trustee, a beneficiary of the trust, means—
    - (i) that person’s spouse or civil partner;
    - (ii) a person (whether or not of the opposite sex) whose relationship with that person has the characteristics of the relationship between husband and wife; or
    - (iii) that person’s parent, brother, sister, child, grandparent or grandchild; and
  - (d) “qualifying termination event”, in relation to a person’s entitlement to occupy land, means—
    - (i) the person becomes a resident of a care home;
    - (ii) the person dies;
    - (iii) the end of a specified period of at least twenty years beginning with the day on which the reversion seller entered into the arrangement.
- (5) For the purposes of paragraph (3)(a)(ii), the area of any land which comprises a building or other structure containing two or more storeys is to be taken to be the aggregate of the floor areas of each of those storeys.
- (6) For the purposes of the definition of “qualifying termination event” in paragraph (4), “care home”—
- (a) in relation to England and Wales, has the meaning given by section 3 of the Care Standards Act 2000;
  - (b) in relation to Scotland, means accommodation provided by a [<sup>F197</sup>“care home service” within the meaning of paragraph 2 of schedule 12 to the Public Services Reform (Scotland) Act 2010];
  - (c) in relation to Northern Ireland, means—
    - (i) a residential care home within the meaning of article 10 of the Health and Personal Social Services (Quality, Improvement and Regulation) (Northern Ireland) Order 2003; or
    - (ii) a nursing home within the meaning of article 11 of that Order.
- (7) In this Order—
- (a) references to entering into a regulated home reversion plan as plan provider include acquiring any obligations or rights (including his interest in land) of the plan provider, under such a plan; but
  - (b) in relation to a person who acquires any such obligations or rights, an activity is a specified kind of activity for the purposes of articles 25B(1)(b) and 53B(b)(ii) and paragraph (2) only if the plan was entered into by the plan provider (rather than the obligations or rights acquired) on or after 6th April 2007.
- (8) Accordingly, references in this Order to a plan provider, other than in paragraph (7), include a person who acquires any such obligations or rights.

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

**F197** Words in art. 63B(6)(b) substituted (28.10.2011) by [The Public Services Reform \(Scotland\) Act 2010 \(Consequential Modifications of Enactments\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/2581\)](#), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. 2 para. 32**

### Exclusions

#### Arranging administration by authorised person

**63C.** A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63B(2) in relation to a regulated home reversion plan where he—

- (a) arranges for another person, being an authorised person with permission to carry on an activity of that kind, to administer the plan; or
- (b) administers the plan himself during a period of not more than one month beginning with the day on which any such arrangement comes to an end.

#### Administration pursuant to agreement with authorised person

**63D.** A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63B(2) in relation to a regulated home reversion plan where he administers the plan pursuant to an agreement with an authorised person who has permission to carry on an activity of that kind.

#### Other exclusions

**63E.** Article 63B is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 72 (overseas persons) and 72A (information society services).]

[<sup>F196</sup>Chapter XVB

Regulated Home Purchase Plans

### The activities

#### Entering into and administering regulated home purchase plans

**63F.**—(1) Entering into a regulated home purchase plan as home purchase provider is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Administering a regulated home purchase plan is also a specified kind of activity where the plan was entered into by way of business on or after 6th April 2007.

(3) In this Chapter—

- (a) a “regulated home purchase plan” is an arrangement comprised in one or more instruments or agreements, in relation to which the following conditions are met at the time it is entered into—
  - (i) the arrangement is one under which a person (the “home purchase provider”) buys a qualifying interest or an undivided share of a qualifying interest in land (other than timeshare accommodation) in the United Kingdom;

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (ii) where an undivided share of a qualifying interest in land is bought, the interest is held on trust for the home purchase provider and the individual or trustees mentioned in paragraph (iii) as beneficial tenants in common;
  - (iii) the arrangement provides for the obligation of an individual or trustees (the “home purchaser”) to buy the interest bought by the home purchase provider over the course of or at the end of a specified period; and
  - (iv) the home purchaser (if he is an individual) or an individual who is a beneficiary of the trust (if the home purchaser is a trustee), or a related person, is entitled under the arrangement to occupy at least 40% of the land in question as or in connection with a dwelling during that period, and intends to do so;
- (b) “administering” a regulated home purchase plan means either or both of—
- (i) notifying the home purchaser of changes in payments due under the plan, or of other matters of which the plan requires him to be notified; and
  - (ii) taking any necessary steps for the purposes of collecting or recovering payments due under the plan from the home purchaser;

but a person is not to be treated as administering a regulated home purchase plan merely because he has, or exercises, a right to take action for the purposes of enforcing the plan or to require that such action is or is not taken.

(4) Article 63B(4)(a) to (c) applies for the purposes of paragraph (3)(a) with references to the “reversion seller” being read as references to the “home purchaser”.

(5) Article 63B(5) applies for the purposes of paragraph (3)(a)(iv) with the reference to “paragraph (3)(a)(ii)” being read as a reference to “paragraph (3)(a)(iv)”.

### *Exclusions*

#### **Arranging administration by authorised person**

**63G.** A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63F(2) in relation to a regulated home purchase plan where he—

- (a) arranges for another person, being an authorised person with permission to carry on an activity of that kind, to administer the plan; or
- (b) administers the plan himself during a period of not more than one month beginning with the day on which any such arrangement comes to an end.

#### **Administration pursuant to agreement with authorised person**

**63H.** A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63F(2) in relation to a regulated home purchase plan where he administers the plan pursuant to an agreement with an authorised person who has permission to carry on an activity of that kind.

#### **Other exclusions**

**63I.** Article 63F is also subject to the exclusions in articles 66 (trustees etc.), 72 (overseas persons) and 72A (information society services).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

## <sup>F198</sup>CHAPTER XVC

### REGULATED SALE AND RENT BACK AGREEMENTS

#### Textual Amendments

**F198** Pt. 2 Ch. 15C inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), 17

#### *The activities*

#### Entering into and administering regulated sale and rent back agreements

**63J.**—(1) Entering into a regulated sale and rent back agreement as an agreement provider is a specified kind of activity.

(2) Administering a regulated sale and rent back agreement is also a specified kind of activity when the agreement was entered into on or after 1st July 2009.

(3) In this Chapter—

- (a) a “regulated sale and rent back agreement” is an arrangement comprised in one or more instruments or agreements, in relation to which the following conditions are met at the time it is entered into—
- (i) the arrangement is one under which a person (the “agreement provider”) buys all or part of the qualifying interest in land (other than timeshare accommodation) in the United Kingdom from an individual or trustees (the “agreement seller”); and
  - (ii) the agreement seller (if the agreement seller is an individual) or an individual who is the beneficiary of the trust (if the agreement seller is a trustee), or a related person, is entitled under the arrangement to occupy at least 40% of the land in question as or in connection with a dwelling, and intends to do so;

but such an arrangement is not a regulated sale and rent back agreement if it is a regulated home reversion plan;

- (b) “administering” a regulated sale and rent back agreement means any of—
- (i) notifying the agreement seller of changes in payments due under the agreement, or of other matters of which the agreement requires the agreement seller to be notified;
  - (ii) taking any necessary steps for the purpose of making payments to the agreement seller under the agreement; and
  - (iii) taking any necessary steps for the purposes of collecting or recovering payments due under the agreement from the agreement seller,

but a person is not to be treated as administering a regulated sale and rent back agreement because that person has, or exercises, a right to take action for the purposes of enforcing the agreement (or to require that such action is or is not taken).

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (3)—

- (a) the reference to a “qualifying interest” in land—
- (i) in relation to land in England and Wales, is to an estate in fee simple absolute or a term of years absolute, whether subsisting at law or in equity;
  - (ii) in relation to land in Scotland, is to the interest of an owner in land or the tenant’s right over or interest in a property subject to a lease;



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (iii) in relation to land in Northern Ireland, is to any freehold estate or any leasehold estate, whether subsisting at law or in equity;
- [<sup>F199</sup>(b) “timeshare accommodation” means overnight accommodation which is the subject of a timeshare contract within the meaning of the Timeshare, Holiday Products, Resale and Exchange Contracts Regulations 2010; and]
- (c) “related person” in relation to the agreement seller or, where the agreement seller is a trustee, a beneficiary of the trust, means—
  - (i) that person’s spouse or civil partner;
  - (ii) a person (whether or not of the opposite sex) whose relationship with that person has the characteristic of the relationship between husband and wife;
  - (iii) that person’s parent, brother, sister, child, grandparent or grandchild.
- (5) For the purposes of paragraph (3)(a)(ii), the area of any land which comprises a building or other structure containing two or more storeys is to be taken to be the aggregate of the floor areas of each of those storeys.
- (6) In this Order—
  - (a) references to entering into a regulated sale and rent back agreement as agreement provider include acquiring any obligations or rights of the agreement provider, including the agreement provider’s interest in land or interests under one or more of the instruments or agreements referred to in paragraph (3)(a); but
  - (b) in relation to a person who acquires any such obligations or rights, an activity is a specified kind of activity for the purposes of articles 25E(1)(b) and 53D(b)(ii) and paragraph (2) only if the agreement was entered into by the agreement provider (rather than the obligations or rights acquired) on or after 1st July 2009.
- (7) Accordingly, references in this Order to an agreement provider, other than in paragraph (6), include a person who acquires any such obligations or rights.

#### Textual Amendments

**F199** Art. 63J(4)(b) substituted (23.2.2011) by [The Timeshare, Holiday Products, Resale and Exchange Contracts Regulations 2010 \(S.I. 2010/2960\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 6 para. 7(3)** (with Sch. 7 para. 4)

#### Exclusions

##### Arranging administration by authorised person

**63K.** A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63J(2) in relation to a regulated sale and rent back agreement where that person—

- (a) arranges for another person, being an authorised person with permission to carry on an activity of that kind, to administer the agreement; or
- (b) administers the agreement during a period of not more than one month beginning with the day on which any such arrangement comes to an end.

##### Administration pursuant to agreement with authorised person

**63L.** A person who is not an authorised person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63J(2) in relation to a regulated sale and rent back agreement where that person administers

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

the agreement pursuant to an agreement with an authorised person who has permission to carry on activity of that kind.

### Other exclusions

**63M.** Article 63J is also subject to the exclusions in article 66 (trustees etc.), 72 (overseas persons) and 72A (information society services).]

## [<sup>F200</sup>CHAPTER 15D

### ACTIVITIES OF RECLAIM FUNDS

#### Textual Amendments

**F200** Pt. 2 Ch. 15D inserted (13.7.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1389\)](#), arts. 1, 4

#### *The activities*

### Dormant account funds

**63N.**—(1) The following are specified kinds of activity—

- (a) the meeting of repayment claims by a reclaim fund;
- (b) the management of dormant account funds (including the investment of such funds) by a reclaim fund.

(2) In this article—

“account”, “balance”, “dormant” and “reclaim fund” have the same meaning as in Part 1 of the Dormant Bank and Building Society Accounts Act 2008 (transfer of balances in dormant accounts) (see section 6 of that Act);

“dormant account funds” and “repayment claims” have the same meaning as in section 5 of that Act;

“management of dormant account funds” means the acceptance of a transfer from a bank or building society of the balance of a dormant account, or a proportion of such a balance, and the management of those funds in such a way as to enable the reclaim fund to meet whatever repayment claims it is prudent to anticipate.]

## CHAPTER XVI

### AGREEING TO CARRY ON ACTIVITIES

#### *The activity*

### Agreeing to carry on specified kinds of activity

**64.** Agreeing to carry on an activity of the kind specified by any other provision of this Part (other than article 5, [<sup>F201</sup>9B,] 10, [<sup>F202</sup>25D,][<sup>F203</sup>51, 52 or 63N]) is a specified kind of activity.

#### Textual Amendments

**F201** Word in art. 64 inserted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), 5

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F202** Word in art. 64 inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **18**
- F203** Words in art. 64 substituted (13.7.2009) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1389\)](#), arts. 1, **5**

### *[<sup>F204</sup>Exclusions*

#### **Textual Amendments**

- F204** Art. 65 and cross-heading substituted (21.8.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/1776\)](#), arts. 1, **3(17)**

#### **Overseas persons etc**

**65.** Article 64 is subject to the exclusions in articles 72 (overseas persons) and 72A (information society services).]

## CHAPTER XVII

### EXCLUSIONS APPLYING TO SEVERAL SPECIFIED KINDS OF ACTIVITY

#### **Trustees, nominees and personal representatives**

**66.**—(1) A person (“X”) does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 where he enters into a transaction as bare trustee or, in Scotland, as nominee for another person (“Y”) and—

- (a) X is acting on Y’s instructions; and
- (b) X does not hold himself out as providing a service of buying and selling securities or contractually based investments.

(2) Subject to paragraph (7), there are excluded from [<sup>F205</sup>articles 25(1) and (2)] [<sup>F206</sup>, 25A(1) and (2), 25B(1) and (2) [<sup>F207</sup>, 25C(1) and (2) and 25E (1) and (2)]] arrangements made by a person acting as trustee or personal representative for or with a view to a transaction which is or is to be entered into—

- (a) by that person and a fellow trustee or personal representative (acting in their capacity as such); or
- (b) by a beneficiary under the trust, will or intestacy.

(3) Subject to paragraph (7), there is excluded from article 37 any activity carried on by a person acting as trustee or personal representative, unless—

- (a) he holds himself out as providing a service comprising an activity of the kind specified by article 37; or
- (b) the assets in question are held for the purposes of an occupational pension scheme, and, by virtue of article 4 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Carrying on Regulated Activities by Way of Business) Order 2001 <sup>M22</sup>, he is to be treated as carrying on that activity by way of business.

[<sup>F208</sup>(3A) Subject to paragraph (7), there is excluded from article 39A any activity carried on by a person acting as trustee or personal representative, unless he holds himself out as providing a service comprising an activity of the kind specified by article 39A.]

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

(4) Subject to paragraph (7), there is excluded from article 40 any activity carried on by a person acting as trustee or personal representative, unless he holds himself out as providing a service comprising an activity of the kind specified by article 40.

[<sup>F209</sup>(4A) There is excluded from article 40 any activity carried on by a person acting as trustee which consists of arranging for one or more other persons to safeguard and administer trust assets where—

- (a) that other person is a qualifying custodian; or
- (b) that safeguarding and administration is also arranged by a qualifying custodian.

In this paragraph, “qualifying custodian” has the meaning given by article 41(2).]

(5) A person does not, by sending or causing to be sent a dematerialised instruction (within the meaning of article 45), carry on an activity of the kind specified by that article if the instruction relates to an investment which that person holds as trustee or personal representative.

(6) Subject to paragraph (7), there is excluded from [<sup>F210</sup>articles 53][<sup>F211</sup>, 53A, 53B [<sup>F212</sup>, 53C and 53D]] the giving of advice by a person acting as trustee or personal representative where he gives the advice to—

- (a) a fellow trustee or personal representative for the purposes of the trust or the estate; or
- (b) a beneficiary under the trust, will or intestacy concerning his interest in the trust fund or estate.

[<sup>F213</sup>(6A) Subject to paragraph (7), a person acting as trustee or personal representative does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 61(1) or (2) where the borrower under the regulated mortgage contract in question is a beneficiary under the trust, will or intestacy.]

[<sup>F214</sup>(6B) Subject to paragraph (7), a person acting as trustee or personal representative does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63B(1) or (2) where the reversion seller under the regulated home reversion plan in question is a beneficiary under the trust, will or intestacy.

(6C) Subject to paragraph (7), a person acting as trustee or personal representative does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63F(1) or (2) where the home purchaser under the regulated home purchase plan in question is a beneficiary under the trust, will or intestacy.]

[<sup>F215</sup>(6D) Subject to paragraph (7), a person acting as a trustee or personal representative does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 63J(1) or (2) where the agreement seller under the regulated sale and rent back agreement is a beneficiary under the trust, will or intestacy.]

(7) Paragraphs (2), (3) [<sup>F216</sup>, (3A)], [<sup>F217</sup>(4), (6)][<sup>F218</sup>, (6A), (6B) [<sup>F219</sup>, (6C) and (6D)]] do not apply if the person carrying on the activity is remunerated for what he does in addition to any remuneration he receives as trustee or personal representative, and for these purposes a person is not to be regarded as receiving additional remuneration merely because his remuneration is calculated by reference to time spent.

[<sup>F220</sup>(8) This article is subject to article 4(4A).]

### Textual Amendments

**F205** Words in art. 66(2) substituted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **18(a)**

**F206** Words in art. 66(2) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **19(a)**

**F207** Words in art. 66(2) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **18(a)**

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F208** Art. 66(3A) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **10(1)(a)**
- F209** Art. 66(4A) inserted (6.4.2005) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/593), arts. 1, **2(4)**
- F210** Words in art. 66(6) substituted (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **18(b)**
- F211** Words in art. 66(6) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **19(b)**
- F212** Words in art. 66(6) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **18(b)**
- F213** Art. 66(6A) inserted (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **18(c)**
- F214** Art. 66(6B)(6C) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **19(c)**
- F215** Art. 66(6D) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **18(c)**
- F216** Word in art. 66(7) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **10(1)(b)**
- F217** Words in art. 66(7) substituted (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 1) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1475), arts. 1(3), **18(d)**
- F218** Words in art. 66(7) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No.2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **19(d)**
- F219** Words in art. 66(7) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **18(d)**
- F220** Art. 66(8) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **19**

#### Marginal Citations

**M22** S.I. 2001/ .

#### Activities carried on in the course of a profession or non-investment business

67.—(1) There is excluded from articles 21, 25(1) and (2) [<sup>F221</sup>, 25A], [<sup>F222</sup>25B, 25C,][<sup>F223</sup>25E,][<sup>F224</sup>39A, 40][<sup>F225</sup>53][<sup>F226</sup>, 53A, 53B [<sup>F227</sup>, 53C and 53D]] any activity which—

- is carried on in the course of carrying on any profession or business which does not otherwise consist of [<sup>F228</sup>the carrying on of regulated activities in the United Kingdom]; and
- may reasonably be regarded as a necessary part of other services provided in the course of that profession or business.

(2) But the exclusion in paragraph (1) does not apply if the activity in question is remunerated separately from the other services.

[<sup>F229</sup>(3) This article is subject to article 4(4) and (4A).]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F221** Word in art. 67(1) inserted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **19(a)**
- F222** Words in art. 67(1) inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **20(a)**
- F223** Word in art. 67(1) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **19(a)**
- F224** Words in art. 67 substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **10(2)**
- F225** Words in art. 67(1) substituted (31.10.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 1\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1475\)](#), arts. 1(3), **19(b)**
- F226** Words in art. 67(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **20(b)**
- F227** Words in art. 67(1) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **19(b)**
- F228** Words in art. 67(1)(a) substituted (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(a), **9**
- F229** Art. 67(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **20**

### Activities carried on in connection with the sale of goods or supply of services

**68.**—<sup>F230</sup>(1) Subject to paragraphs (9), (10) and (11), this article concerns certain activities carried on for the purposes of or in connection with the sale of goods or supply of services by a supplier to a customer, where—

“supplier” means a person whose main business is to sell goods or supply services and not to carry on any activities of the kind specified by any of articles 14, 21, 25, 37 [<sup>F230</sup>, 39A], 40, 45, 51, 52 and 53 and, where the supplier is a member of a group, also means any other member of that group; and

“customer” means a person, other than an individual, to whom a supplier sells goods or supplies services, or agrees to do so, and, where the customer is a member of a group, also means any other member of that group;

and in this article “related sale or supply” means a sale of goods or supply of services to the customer otherwise than by the supplier, but for or in connection with the same purpose as the sale or supply mentioned above.

(2) There is excluded from article 14 any transaction entered into by a supplier with a customer, if the transaction is entered into for the purposes of or in connection with the sale of goods or supply of services, or a related sale or supply.

(3) There is excluded from article 21 any transaction entered into [<sup>F231</sup> by a supplier as agent for a customer], if the transaction is entered into for the purposes of or in connection with the sale of goods or supply of services, or a related sale or supply, and provided that—

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) where the investment to which the transaction relates is a security, the supplier does not hold himself out (other than to the customer) as engaging in the business of buying securities of the kind to which the transaction relates with a view to selling them, and does not regularly solicit members of the public for the purpose of inducing them (as principals or agents) to buy, sell, subscribe for or underwrite securities;
  - (b) where the investment to which the transaction relates is a contractually based investment, the supplier enters into the transaction—
    - (i) with or through an authorised person, or an exempt person acting in the course of a business comprising a regulated activity in relation to which he is exempt; or
    - (ii) through an office outside the United Kingdom maintained by a party to the transaction, and with or through a person whose head office is situated outside the United Kingdom and whose ordinary business involves him in carrying on activities of the kind specified by any of articles 14, 21, 25, 37, 40, 45, 51, 52 and 53 or, so far as relevant to any of those articles, article 64, or would do so apart from any exclusion from any of those articles made by this Order.
- (4) In paragraph (3)(a), “members of the public” has the meaning given by article 15(2), references to “A” being read as references to the supplier.
- (5) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2) arrangements made by a supplier for, or with a view to, a transaction which is or is to be entered into by a customer for the purposes of or in connection with the sale of goods or supply of services, or a related sale or supply.
- (6) There is excluded from article 37 any activity carried on by a supplier where the assets in question—
- (a) are those of a customer; and
  - (b) are managed for the purposes of or in connection with the sale of goods or supply of services, or a related sale or supply.
- (7) There is excluded from article 40 any activity carried on by a supplier where the assets in question are or are to be safeguarded and administered for the purposes of or in connection with the sale of goods or supply of services, or a related sale or supply.
- (8) There is excluded from article 53 the giving of advice by a supplier to a customer for the purposes of or in connection with the sale of goods or supply of services, or a related sale or supply, or to a person with whom the customer proposes to enter into a transaction for the purposes of or in connection with such a sale or supply or related sale or supply.
- (9) Paragraphs (2), (3) and (5) do not apply in the case of a transaction for the sale or purchase of a [<sup>F232</sup>contract of insurance], an investment of the kind specified by article 81, or an investment of the kind specified by article 89 so far as relevant to such a contract or such an investment.
- (10) Paragraph (6) does not apply where the assets managed consist of qualifying contracts of insurance, investments of the kind specified by article 81, or investments of the kind specified by article 89 so far as relevant to such contracts or such investments.
- (11) Paragraph (8) does not apply in the case of advice in relation to an investment which is a [<sup>F233</sup>contract of insurance], is of the kind specified by article 81, or is of the kind specified by article 89 so far as relevant to such a contract or such an investment.
- [<sup>F234</sup>(12) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### Textual Amendments

- F230** Word in art. 68(1) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **10(3)(a)**
- F231** Words in art. 68(3) substituted (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/3544\)](#), arts. 1(a), **10**
- F232** Words in art. 68(9) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **10(3)(b)**
- F233** Words in art. 68(11) substituted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **10(3)(c)**
- F234** Art. 68(12) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **21**

### Groups and joint enterprises

**69.**—(1) There is excluded from article 14 any transaction into which a person enters as principal with another person if that other person is also acting as principal and—

- (a) they are members of the same group; or
- (b) they are, or propose to become, participators in a joint enterprise and the transaction is entered into for the purposes of or in connection with that enterprise.

(2) There is excluded from article 21 any transaction into which a person enters as agent for another person if that other person is acting as principal, and the condition in paragraph (1)(a) or (b) is met, provided that—

- (a) where the investment to which the transaction relates is a security, the agent does not hold himself out (other than to members of the same group or persons who are or propose to become participators with him in a joint enterprise) as engaging in the business of buying securities of the kind to which the transaction relates with a view to selling them, and does not regularly solicit members of the public for the purpose of inducing them (as principals or agents) to buy, sell, subscribe for or underwrite securities;
- (b) where the investment to which the transaction relates is a contractually based investment, the agent enters into the transaction—
  - (i) with or through an authorised person, or an exempt person acting in the course of a business comprising a regulated activity in relation to which he is exempt; or
  - (ii) through an office outside the United Kingdom maintained by a party to the transaction, and with or through a person whose head office is situated outside the United Kingdom and whose ordinary business involves him in carrying on activities of the kind specified by any of articles 14, 21, 25, 37, 40, 45, 51, 52 and 53 or, so far as relevant to any of those articles, article 64, or would do so apart from any exclusion from any of those articles made by this Order.

(3) In paragraph (2)(a), “members of the public” has the meaning given by article 15(2), references to “A” being read as references to the agent.

(4) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2) arrangements made by a person if—



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) he is a member of a group and the arrangements in question are for, or with a view to, a transaction which is or is to be entered into, as principal, by another member of the same group; or
  - (b) he is or proposes to become a participator in a joint enterprise, and the arrangements in question are for, or with a view to, a transaction which is or is to be entered into, as principal, by another person who is or proposes to become a participator in that enterprise, for the purposes of or in connection with that enterprise.
- (5) There is excluded from article 37 any activity carried on by a person if—
- (a) he is a member of a group and the assets in question belong to another member of the same group; or
  - (b) he is or proposes to become a participator in a joint enterprise with the person to whom the assets belong, and the assets are managed for the purposes of or in connection with that enterprise.
- (6) There is excluded from article 40 any activity carried on by a person if—
- (a) he is a member of a group and the assets in question belong to another member of the same group; or
  - (b) he is or proposes to become a participator in a joint enterprise, and the assets in question—
    - (i) belong to another person who is or proposes to become a participator in that joint enterprise; and
    - (ii) are or are to be safeguarded and administered for the purposes of or in connection with that enterprise.
- (7) A person who is a member of a group does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 45 where he sends a dematerialised instruction, or causes one to be sent, on behalf of another member of the same group, if the investment to which the instruction relates is one in respect of which a member of the same group is registered as holder in the appropriate register of securities, or will be so registered as a result of the instruction.
- (8) In paragraph (7), “dematerialised instruction” and “register of securities” have the meaning given by regulation 3 of the Uncertificated Securities Regulations [<sup>F235</sup>2001].
- (9) There is excluded from article 53 the giving of advice by a person if—
- (a) he is a member of a group and gives the advice in question to another member of the same group; or
  - (b) he is, or proposes to become, a participator in a joint enterprise and the advice in question is given to another person who is, or proposes to become, a participator in that enterprise for the purposes of or in connection with that enterprise.
- [<sup>F236</sup>(10) Paragraph (2) does not apply to a transaction for the sale or purchase of a contract of insurance.
- (11) Paragraph (4) does not apply to arrangements for, or with a view to, a transaction for the sale or purchase of a contract of insurance.
- (12) Paragraph (9) does not apply where the advice relates to a transaction for the sale or purchase of a contract of insurance.]
- [<sup>F237</sup>(13) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F235** Word in art. 69(8) substituted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **13(4)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

**F236** Art. 69(10)-(12) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **10(4)**

**F237** Art. 69(13) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **22**

### Activities carried on in connection with the sale of a body corporate

**70.**—(1) A person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 by entering as principal into a transaction if—

- (a) the transaction is one to acquire or dispose of shares in a body corporate other than an open-ended investment company, or is entered into for the purposes of such an acquisition or disposal; and
- (b) either—
  - (i) the conditions set out in paragraph (2) are met; or
  - (ii) those conditions are not met, but the object of the transaction may nevertheless reasonably be regarded as being the acquisition of day to day control of the affairs of the body corporate.

(2) The conditions mentioned in paragraph (1)(b) are that—

- (a) the shares consist of or include 50 per cent or more of the voting shares in the body corporate; or
- (b) the shares, together with any already held by the person acquiring them, consist of or include at least that percentage of such shares; and
- (c) in either case, the acquisition or disposal is between parties each of whom is a body corporate, a partnership, a single individual or a group of connected individuals.

(3) In paragraph (2)(c), “a group of connected individuals” means—

- (a) in relation to a party disposing of shares in a body corporate, a single group of persons each of whom is—
  - (i) a director or manager of the body corporate;
  - (ii) a close relative of any such director or manager;
  - (iii) a person acting as trustee for any person falling within paragraph (i) or (ii); and
- (b) in relation to a party acquiring shares in a body corporate, a single group of persons each of whom is—
  - (i) a person who is or is to be a director or manager of the body corporate;
  - (ii) a close relative of any such person; or
  - (iii) a person acting as trustee for any person falling within paragraph (i) or (ii).

(4) A person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 21 by entering as agent into a transaction of the kind described in paragraph (1).

(5) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2) arrangements made for, or with a view to, a transaction of the kind described in paragraph (1).

(6) There is excluded from article 53 the giving of advice in connection with a transaction (or proposed transaction) of the kind described in paragraph (1).

[<sup>F238</sup>(7) Paragraphs (4), (5) and (6) do not apply in the case of a transaction for the sale or purchase of a contract of insurance.]

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

[<sup>F239</sup>(8) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F238** Art. 70(7) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **10(5)**

**F239** Art. 70(8) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **23**

#### Activities carried on in connection with employee share schemes

**71.—(1)** A person (“C”), a member of the same group as C or a relevant trustee does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 by entering as principal into a transaction the purpose of which is to enable or facilitate—

- (a) transactions in shares in, or debentures issued by, C between, or for the benefit of, any of the persons mentioned in paragraph (2); or
- (b) the holding of such shares or debentures by, or for the benefit of, such persons.

(2) The persons referred to in paragraph (1) are—

- (a) the bona fide employees or former employees of C or of another member of the same group as C;
- (b) the wives, husbands, widows, widowers, [<sup>F240</sup>civil partners, surviving civil partners,] or children or step-children under the age of eighteen of such employees or former employees.

(3) C, a member of the same group as C or a relevant trustee does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 21 by entering as agent into a transaction of the kind described in paragraph (1).

(4) There are excluded from article 25(1) or (2) arrangements made by C, a member of the same group as C or a relevant trustee if the arrangements in question are for, or with a view to, a transaction of the kind described in paragraph (1).

(5) There is excluded from article 40 any activity if the assets in question are, or are to be, safeguarded and administered by C, a member of the same group as C or a relevant trustee for the purpose of enabling or facilitating transactions of the kind described in paragraph (1).

(6) In this article—

- (a) “shares” and “debentures” include—
  - (i) any investment of the kind specified by article 76 [<sup>F241</sup>, 77 or 77A];
  - (ii) any investment of the kind specified by article 79 or 80 so far as relevant to articles 76 [<sup>F242</sup>, 77 and 77A]; and
  - (iii) any investment of the kind specified by article 89 so far as relevant to investments of the kind mentioned in paragraph (i) or (ii);
- (b) “relevant trustee” means a person who, in pursuance of the arrangements made for the purpose mentioned in paragraph (1), holds, as trustee, shares in or debentures issued by C.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F240** Words in art. 71(2)(b) inserted (5.12.2005) by [The Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Amendments to Subordinate Legislation\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2114\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. 16 para. 1(4)**
- F241** Words in art. 71(6)(a)(i) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 5(c)**
- F242** Words in art. 71(6)(a)(ii) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 5(d)**

### Overseas persons

**72.**—(1) An overseas person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 14 [<sup>F243</sup>or 25D] by—

- (a) entering into a transaction as principal with or through an authorised person, or an exempt person acting in the course of a business comprising a regulated activity in relation to which he is exempt; or
- (b) entering into a transaction as principal with a person in the United Kingdom, if the transaction is the result of a legitimate approach.

(2) An overseas person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 21 [<sup>F244</sup>or 25D] by—

- (a) entering into a transaction as agent for any person with or through an authorised person or an exempt person acting in the course of a business comprising a regulated activity in relation to which he is exempt; or
- (b) entering into a transaction with another party ("X") as agent for any person ("Y"), other than with or through an authorised person or such an exempt person, unless—
  - (i) either X or Y is in the United Kingdom; and
  - (ii) the transaction is the result of an approach (other than a legitimate approach) made by or on behalf of, or to, whichever of X or Y is in the United Kingdom.

(3) There are excluded from article 25(1) [<sup>F245</sup>or 25D] arrangements made by an overseas person with an authorised person, or an exempt person acting in the course of a business comprising a regulated activity in relation to which he is exempt.

(4) There are excluded from article 25(2) [<sup>F246</sup>or 25D] arrangements made by an overseas person with a view to transactions which are, as respects transactions in the United Kingdom, confined to—

- (a) transactions entered into by authorised persons as principal or agent; and
- (b) transactions entered into by exempt persons, as principal or agent, in the course of business comprising regulated activities in relation to which they are exempt.

(5) There is excluded from article 53 the giving of advice by an overseas person as a result of a legitimate approach.

[<sup>F247</sup>5A) An overseas person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 25A(1)(a), 25B(1)(a) [<sup>F248</sup>, 25C(1)(a) or 25E(1)(a)] if each person who may be contemplating entering into the relevant type of agreement in the relevant capacity is non-resident.

(5B) There are excluded from articles 25A(1)(b), 25B(1)(b) [<sup>F249</sup>, 25C(1)(b) and 25E(1)(b)] arrangements made by an overseas person to vary the terms of a qualifying agreement.

(5C) There are excluded from articles 25A(2), 25B(2) [<sup>F250</sup>, 25C(2) and 25E(2)], arrangements made by an overseas person which are made solely with a view to non-resident persons who

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

participate in those arrangements entering, in the relevant capacity, into the relevant type of agreement.

(5D) An overseas person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified in article 61(1), 63B(1) [<sup>F251</sup>, 63F(1) or 63J(1)] by entering into a qualifying agreement.

(5E) An overseas person does not carry on an activity of the kind specified in article 61(2), 63B(2) [<sup>F252</sup>, 63F(2) or 63J(2)] where he administers a qualifying agreement.

(5F) In paragraphs (5A) to (5E)—

- (a) “non-resident” means not normally resident in the United Kingdom;
- (b) “qualifying agreement” means—
  - (i) in relation to articles 25A and 61, a regulated mortgage contract where the borrower (or each borrower) is non-resident when he enters into it;
  - (ii) in relation to articles 25B and 63B, a regulated home reversion plan where the reversion seller (or each reversion seller) is non-resident when he enters into it;
  - (iii) in relation to articles 25C and 63F, a regulated home purchase plan where the home purchaser (or each home purchaser) is non-resident when he enters into it;
  - [<sup>F253</sup>(iv) in relation to articles 25E and 63J, a regulated sale and rent back agreement where the agreement seller (or each agreement seller) is non-resident when the agreement seller enters into it;]
- (c) “the relevant capacity” means—
  - (i) in the case of a regulated mortgage contract, as borrower;
  - (ii) in the case of a regulated home reversion plan, as reversion seller or plan provider;
  - (iii) in the case of a regulated home purchase plan, as home purchaser;
  - [<sup>F254</sup>(iv) in the case of a regulated sale and rent back agreement, as agreement seller or agreement provider;]
- (d) “the relevant type of agreement” means—
  - (i) in relation to article 25A, a regulated mortgage contract;
  - (ii) in relation to article 25B, a regulated home reversion plan;
  - (iii) in relation to article 25C, a regulated home purchase plan [<sup>F255</sup>;
  - (iv) in relation to article 25E, a regulated sale and rent back agreement].]

(6) There is excluded from article 64 any agreement made by an overseas person to carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 25(1) or (2), 37 [<sup>F256</sup>, 39A], 40 or 45 if the agreement is the result of a legitimate approach.

(7) In this article, “legitimate approach” means—

- (a) an approach made to the overseas person which has not been solicited by him in any way, or has been solicited by him in a way which does not contravene section 21 of the Act; or
- (b) an approach made by or on behalf of the overseas person in a way which does not contravene that section.

[<sup>F257</sup>(8) Paragraphs (1) to (5) do not apply where the overseas person is an investment firm or credit institution—

- (a) who is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis; and
- (b) whose home Member State is the United Kingdom.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### Textual Amendments

- F243** Words in art. 72(1) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **24(a)**
- F244** Words in art. 72(2) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **24(b)**
- F245** Words in art. 72(3) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **24(c)**
- F246** Words in art. 72(4) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **24(d)**
- F247** Art. 72(5A)-(5F) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/2383), arts. 1(2), **21**
- F248** Words in art. 72(5A) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **20(a)**
- F249** Words in art. 72(5B) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **20(b)**
- F250** Words in art. 72(5C) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **20(c)**
- F251** Words in art. 72(5D) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **20(d)**
- F252** Words in art. 72(5E) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **20(e)**
- F253** Art. 72(5F)(b)(iv) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **20(f)**
- F254** Art. 72(5F)(c)(iv) inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **20(g)**
- F255** Art. 72(5F)(d)(iv) and semi-colon inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2009 (S.I. 2009/1342), arts. 1(2), **20(h)**
- F256** Word in art. 72(6) inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2003 (S.I. 2003/1476), arts. 1(3), **10(6)**
- F257** Art. 72(8) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment No. 3) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/3384), arts. 1(2), **24(e)**

### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C17** Art. 72 modified in part (31.10.2001) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Interim Permissions) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/3374), art. 1, **Sch. para. 12** (with Sch. para. 4)

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- C18** Art. 72 modified in part (31.10.2004) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transitional Provisions) (Mortgages) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/2615), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. para. 12** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C19** Art. 72 modified in part (14.1.2005) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Transitional Provisions) (General Insurance Intermediaries) Order 2004 (S.I. 2004/3351), art. 1(2)(b), **Sch. para. 11** (with Sch. para. 4)
- C20** Art. 72 modified in part (6.4.2007) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) Order 2006 (S.I. 2006/1969), art. 1(3), **Sch. para. 13** (with Sch. para. 4)

### **[<sup>F258</sup>Information society services**

**72A.**—(1) There is excluded from this Part any activity consisting of the provision of an information society service from an EEA State other than the United Kingdom.

(2) The exclusion in paragraph (1) does not apply to the activity of effecting or carrying out a contract of insurance as principal, where—

- (a) the activity is carried on by an undertaking which has received official authorisation in accordance with [<sup>F259</sup>Article 4 of the life assurance consolidation directive] or the first non-life insurance directive, and
- (b) the insurance falls within the scope of any of the insurance directives.]

### **Textual Amendments**

- F258** Art. 72A inserted (21.8.2002) by The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) (Amendment) (No. 2) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/1776), arts. 1, 2
- F259** Words in art. 72A(2)(a) substituted (11.1.2005) by The Life Assurance Consolidation Directive (Consequential Amendments) Regulations 2004 (S.I. 2004/3379), regs. 1, 17

### **[<sup>F260</sup>Activities carried on by a provider of relevant goods or services**

**72B.**—(1) In this article—

“connected contract of insurance” means a contract of insurance which—

- (a) is not a contract of long-term insurance;
- (b) has a total duration (or would have a total duration were any right to renew conferred by the contract exercised) of five years or less;
- (c) has an annual premium (or, where the premium is paid otherwise than by way of annual premium, the equivalent of an annual premium) of 500 euro or less, or the equivalent amount in sterling or other currency;
- (d) covers the risk of—
  - (i) breakdown, loss of, or damage to, non-motor goods supplied by the provider; or
  - (ii) [<sup>F261</sup>damage to, or loss of, baggage and other risks linked to the travel booked with the provider (“travel risks”) in circumstances where—
    - (aa) the travel booked with the provider relates to attendance at an event organised or managed by that provider and the party seeking insurance is not an individual (acting in his private capacity) or a small business; or
    - (bb) the travel booked with the provider is only the hire of an aircraft, vehicle or vessel which does not provide sleeping accommodation;]

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (e) does not cover any liability risks (except, in the case of a contract which covers travel risks, where that cover is ancillary to the main cover provided by the contract);
- (f) is complementary to the non-motor goods being supplied or service being provided by the provider; and
- (g) is of such a nature that the only information that a person requires in order to carry on an activity of the kind specified by article 21, 25, 39A or 53 in relation to it is the cover provided by the contract;

“non-motor goods” means goods which are not mechanically propelled road vehicles;

“provider” means a person who supplies non-motor goods or provides services related to travel in the course of carrying on a profession or business which does not otherwise consist of the carrying on of regulated activities. <sup>[F262]</sup>For these purposes, the transfer of possession of an aircraft, vehicle or vessel under an agreement for hire which is not—

- (a) a hire-purchase agreement within the meaning of section 189(1) of the Consumer Credit Act 1974, or
- (b) any other agreement which contemplates that the property in those goods will also pass at some time in the future,

is the provision of a service related to travel, not a supply of goods;

“small business” means—

- (a) subject to paragraph (b) a sole trader, body corporate, partnership or an unincorporated association which had a turnover in the last financial year of less than £1,000,000;
- (b) where the business concerned is a member of a group within the meaning of <sup>[F263]</sup>section 474(1) of the Companies Act 2006], reference to its turnover means the combined turnover of the group;

“turnover” means the amounts derived from the provision of goods and services falling within the business’s ordinary activities, after deduction of trade discounts, value added tax and any other taxes based on the amounts so derived.]

(2) There is excluded from article 21 any transaction for the sale or purchase of a connected contract of insurance into which a provider enters as agent.

(3) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2) any arrangements made by a provider for, or with a view to, a transaction for the sale or purchase of a connected contract of insurance.

(4) There is excluded from article 39A any activity carried on by a provider where the contract of insurance in question is a connected contract of insurance.

(5) There is excluded from article 53 the giving of advice by a provider in relation to a transaction for the sale or purchase of a connected contract of insurance.

(6) For the purposes of this article, a contract of insurance which covers travel risks is not to be treated as a contract of long-term insurance, notwithstanding the fact that it contains related and subsidiary provisions such that it might be regarded as a contract of long-term insurance, if the cover to which those provisions relate is ancillary to the main cover provided by the contract.

#### Textual Amendments

**F260** Arts. 72B-72D inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **11**

**F261** Words in art. 72B(1) substituted (30.6.2008 for specified purposes, 1.1.2009 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3510\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)** (with regs. 3-9)



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F262** Words in art. 72B(1) inserted (30.6.2008 for specified purposes, 1.1.2009 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2007 \(S.I. 2007/3510\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(3)** (with regs. 3-9)
- F263** Words in art. 72B(1) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(5)**

### Provision of information on an incidental basis

**72C.**—(1) There is excluded from articles 25(1) and (2) the making of arrangements for, or with a view to, a transaction for the sale or purchase of a contract of insurance or an investment of the kind specified by article 89, so far as relevant to such a contract, where that activity meets the conditions specified in paragraph (4).

- (2) There is excluded from articles 37 and 40 any activity—
- (a) where the assets in question are rights under a contract of insurance or an investment of the kind specified by article 89, so far as relevant to such a contract; and
  - (b) which meets the conditions specified in paragraph (4).
- (3) There is excluded from article 39A any activity which meets the conditions specified in paragraph (4).
- (4) The conditions specified in this paragraph are that the activity—
- (a) consists of the provision of information to the policyholder or potential policyholder;
  - (b) is carried on by a person in the course of carrying on a profession or business which does not otherwise consist of the carrying on of regulated activities; and
  - (c) may reasonably be regarded as being incidental to that profession or business.

### Textual Amendments

- F260** Arts. 72B-72D inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **11**

### Large risks contracts where risk situated outside the EEA

**72D.**—(1) There is excluded from articles 21, 25(1) and (2), 39A and 53 any activity which is carried on in relation to a large risks contract of insurance, to the extent that the risk or commitment covered by the contract is not situated in an EEA State.

(2) In this article, a “large risks contract of insurance” is a contract of insurance the principal object of which is to cover—

- (a) risks falling within paragraph 4 (railway rolling stock), 5 (aircraft), 6 (ships), 7 (goods in transit), 11 (aircraft liability) or 12 (liability of ships) of Part 1 of Schedule 1;
  - (b) risks falling within paragraph 14 (credit) or 15 (suretyship) of that Part provided that the risks relate to a business carried on by the policyholder; or
  - (c) risks falling within paragraph 3 (land vehicles), 8 (fire and natural forces), 9 (damage to property), 10 (motor vehicle liability), 13 (general liability) or 16 (miscellaneous financial loss) of that Part provided that the risks relate to a business carried on by the policyholder and that the condition specified in paragraph (3) is met in relation to that business.
- (3) The condition specified in this paragraph is that at least two of the three following criteria were met in the most recent financial year for which information is available—

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (a) the balance sheet total of the business [<sup>F264</sup>(within the meaning of section 382(5) or 465(5) of the Companies Act 2006)] exceeded 6.2 million euro,
- (b) the net turnover [<sup>F265</sup>(within the meaning given to “turnover” by section 474(1) of the Companies Act 2006)] exceeded 12.8 million euro,
- (c) the number of employees [<sup>F266</sup>(within the meaning given by sections 382(6) and 465(6) of the Companies Act 2006)] exceeded 250,

and for a financial year which is a company’s financial year but not in fact a year, the net turnover of the policyholder shall be proportionately adjusted.

(4) For the purposes of paragraph (3), where the policyholder is a member of a group for which consolidated accounts (within the meaning of the Seventh Company Law Directive) are drawn up, the question whether the condition specified by that paragraph is met is to be determined by reference to those accounts.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F260** Arts. 72B-72D inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **11**

**F264** Words in art. 72D(3)(a) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(6)(a)**

**F265** Words in art. 72D(3)(b) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(6)(b)**

**F266** Words in art. 72D(3)(c) substituted (12.5.2011) by [The Companies Act 2006 \(Consequential Amendments and Transitional Provisions\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1265\)](#), arts. 1(2), **13(6)(c)**

#### [<sup>F267</sup>**Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Funds**

**72E.**—(1) A body corporate of a type specified in paragraph (7) does not carry on the activity of the kind specified by article 21 by entering as agent into a transaction on behalf of the participants of a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund.

(2) There are excluded from article 25(1) and (2) arrangements, made by a body corporate of a type specified in paragraph (7), for or with a view to a transaction which is or is to be entered into by or on behalf of the participants in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund.

(3) There is excluded from article 37 any activity, carried on by a body corporate of a type specified in paragraph (7), which consists in the managing of assets belonging to the participants in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund.

(4) There is excluded from article 40 any activity, carried on by a body corporate of a type specified in paragraph (7), in respect of assets belonging to the participants in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund.

(5) A body corporate of a type specified in paragraph (7) does not carry on the activity of the kind specified in article 51(1)(a) where it carries on the activity of establishing, operating or winding up a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund.

(6) A body corporate of a type specified in paragraph (7) does not carry on the activity of the kind specified in article 53 where it is advising the participants in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund on investments to be made by or on behalf of the participants of that Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund.

(7) The type of body corporate specified is a limited company—

- (i) which operates a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund; and

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(ii) the members of which are participants in the Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund operated by that limited company and between them have invested at least 50 per cent of the total investment in that Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund excluding any investment made by the Secretary of State.

(8) For the purposes of paragraph (7), “a limited company” means a body corporate with limited liability which is a company or firm formed in accordance with the law of an EEA State and having its registered office, central administration or principal place of business within the territory of an EEA State.

(9) Nothing in this article has the effect of excluding a body corporate from the application of the Money Laundering Regulations [<sup>F268</sup>2007], in so far as those Regulations would have applied to it but for this article.

(10) Nothing in this article has the effect of excluding a body corporate from the application of section 397 of the Act (misleading statements and practices), in so far as that section would have applied to it but for this article.

[<sup>F269</sup>(11) This article is subject to article 4(4).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F267** Arts. 72E, 72F inserted (1.10.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1518\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)**

**F268** Word in art. 72E(9) substituted (15.12.2007) by [The Money Laundering Regulations 2007 \(S.I. 2007/2157\)](#), reg. 1(1), **Sch. 6 para. 10**

**F269** Art. 72E(11) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **25**

#### [<sup>F267</sup>Interpretation

**72F.**—(1) For the purposes of this article and of article 72E—

“Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund” means a collective investment scheme which—

- (a) is established for the purpose of enabling participants to participate in or receive profits or income arising from the acquisition, holding, management or disposal of investments falling within one or more of—
  - (i) article 76, being shares in an unlisted company;
  - (ii) article 77, being instruments creating or acknowledging indebtedness in respect of an unlisted company;
  - (iia) [<sup>F270</sup>article 77A, being rights under an alternative finance investment bond issued by an unlisted company;] and
  - (iii) article 79, being warrants or other instruments entitling the holder to subscribe for shares in an unlisted company;
- (b) has only the following as its participants—
  - (i) the Secretary of State;
  - (ii) a body corporate of a type specified in article 72E(7); and
  - (iii) one or more persons each of whom at the time they became a participant was—
    - (aa) a sophisticated investor;

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (bb) a high net worth individual;
- (cc) a high net worth company;
- (dd) a high net worth unincorporated association;
- (ee) a trustee of a high value trust; or
- (ff) a self-certified sophisticated investor;
- (c) is prevented, by the arrangements by which it is established, from—
  - (i) acquiring investments, other than those falling within paragraphs (i) to (iii) of sub-paragraph (a); and
  - (ii) acquiring investments falling within paragraphs (i) to (iii) of sub-paragraph (a) in an unlisted company, where the aggregated cost of those investments exceeds £2 million, unless that acquisition is necessary to prevent or reduce the dilution of an existing share-holding in that unlisted company;

“high net worth company” means a body corporate which—

- (a) falls within article 49(2)(a) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001 (high net worth companies, unincorporated associations etc.); and
- (b) has executed a document [<sup>F271</sup>(in a manner which binds the company)] in the following terms:

“This company is a high net worth company and falls within article 49(2)(a) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001. We understand that any Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund (within the meaning of article 72F of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001), in which this company participates, or any person who operates that Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund, in which this company participates, will not be authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (and so will not have to satisfy the threshold conditions set out in Part I of Schedule 6 to that Act and will not be subject to Financial Services Authority rules such as those on holding client money). We understand that this means that redress through the Financial Services Authority, the Financial Ombudsman Scheme or the Financial Services Compensation Scheme will not be available. We also understand the risks associated in investing in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund and are aware that it is open to us to seek advice from someone who is authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 and who specialises in advising on this kind of investment.”

“high net worth individual” means an individual who—

- (a) is a “certified high net worth individual” within the meaning of article 48(2) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001 (certified high net worth individuals); and
- (b) has signed a statement in the following terms:

“I declare that I am a certified high net worth individual within the meaning of article 48(2) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001 and that I understand that any Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund (within the meaning of article 72F of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001), in which I participate, or any person who operates that Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund, in which I participate, will not be authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (and so will not have to satisfy the threshold conditions set out in Part I of Schedule 6 to

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

that Act and will not be subject to Financial Services Authority rules such as those on holding client money). I understand that this means that redress through the Financial Services Authority, the Financial Ombudsman Scheme or the Financial Services Compensation Scheme will not be available. I also understand the risks associated in investing in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund and am aware that it is open to me to seek advice from someone who is authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 and who specialises in advising on this kind of investment.”;

“high net worth unincorporated association” means an unincorporated association—

- (a) which falls within article 49(2)(b) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001; and
- (b) on behalf of which an officer of that association or a member of its governing body has signed a statement in the following terms:

“This unincorporated association is a high net worth unincorporated association and falls within article 49(2)(b) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001. I understand that any Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund (within the meaning of article 72F of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001), in which this association participates, or any person who operates that Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund, in which this association participates, will not be authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (and so will not have to satisfy the threshold conditions set out in Part I of Schedule 6 to that Act and will not be subject to Financial Services Authority rules such as those on holding client money). I understand that this means that redress through the Financial Services Authority, the Financial Ombudsman Scheme or the Financial Services Compensation Scheme will not be available. I also understand the risks associated in investing in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund and am aware that it is open to the association to seek advice from someone who is authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 and who specialises in advising on this kind of investment.”;

“high value trust” means a trust—

- (a) where the aggregate value of the cash and investments which form a part of the trust’s assets (before deducting the amount of its liabilities) is £10 million or more;
- (b) on behalf of which a trustee has signed a statement in the following terms:

“This trust is a high value trust. I understand that any Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund (within the meaning of article 72F of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001), in which this trust participates, or any person who operates that Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund, in which this trust participates, will not be authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (and so will not have to satisfy the threshold conditions set out in Part I of Schedule 6 to that Act and will not be subject to Financial Services Authority rules such as those on holding client money). I understand that this means that redress through the Financial Services Authority, the Financial Ombudsman Scheme or the Financial Services Compensation Scheme will not be available. I also understand the risks associated in investing in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund and am aware that it is open to the trust to seek advice from someone who is authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 and who specialises in advising on this kind of investment.”;

“self-certified sophisticated investor” means an individual who—

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) is a “self-certified sophisticated investor” within the meaning of article 50A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001;
- (b) has signed a statement in the following terms:

“I declare that I am a self-certified sophisticated investor within the meaning of article 50A of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001 and that I understand that any Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund (within the meaning of article 72F of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001), in which I participate, or any person who operates that Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund, in which I participate, will not be authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (and so will not have to satisfy the threshold conditions set out in Part I of Schedule 6 to that Act and will not be subject to Financial Services Authority rules such as those on holding client money). I understand that this means that redress through the Financial Services Authority, the Financial Ombudsman Scheme or the Financial Services Compensation Scheme will not be available. I also understand the risks associated in investing in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund and am aware that it is open to me to seek advice from someone who is authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 and who specialises in advising on this kind of investment.”;

“sophisticated investor” means an individual who—

- (a) is a “certified sophisticated investor” within the meaning of article 50(1) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001; and
- (b) has signed a statement in the following terms:

“I declare that I am a certified sophisticated investor within the meaning of article 50(1) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001 and that I understand that any Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund (within the meaning of article 72F of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001), in which I participate, or any person who operates that Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund, in which I participate, will not be authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (and so will not have to satisfy the threshold conditions set out in Part I of Schedule 6 to that Act and will not be subject to Financial Services Authority rules such as those on holding client money). I understand that this means that redress through the Financial Services Authority, the Financial Ombudsman Scheme or the Financial Services Compensation Scheme will not be available. I also understand the risks associated in investing in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund and am aware that it is open to me to seek advice from someone who is authorised under the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 and who specialises in advising on this kind of investment.”;

“unlisted company” has the meaning given by article 3 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Financial Promotion) Order 2001.

(2) References in this Article and in Article 72E to a participant in a Business Angel-led Enterprise Capital Fund, doing things on behalf of such a participant and property belonging to such a participant are, respectively, references to that participant in that capacity, to doing things on behalf of that participant in that capacity or to the property of that participant held in that capacity.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F267** Arts. 72E, 72F inserted (1.10.2005) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/1518\)](#), arts. 1, **2(3)**

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- F270** Words in art. 72F(1) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 5(e)**
- F271** Words in art. 72F(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **22**

## PART III

### SPECIFIED INVESTMENTS

#### Investments: general

73. The following kinds of investment are specified for the purposes of section 22 of the Act.

#### Deposits

74. A deposit.

#### [<sup>F272</sup>Electronic money

74A. Electronic money.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F272** Art. 74A inserted (27.4.2002) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2002 \(S.I. 2002/682\)](#), arts. 1(2)(b), **6**

#### Contracts of insurance

75. Rights under a contract of insurance.

#### Shares etc.

76.—(1) Shares or stock in the share capital of—

- (a) any body corporate (wherever incorporated), and
- (b) any unincorporated body constituted under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom.

(2) Paragraph (1) includes—

- (a) any shares of a class defined as deferred shares for the purposes of section 119 of the Building Societies Act 1986 <sup>M23</sup>; and
- (b) any transferable shares in a body incorporated under the law of, or any part of, the United Kingdom relating to industrial and provident societies or credit unions, or in a body constituted under the law of another EEA State for purposes equivalent to those of such a body.

(3) But subject to paragraph (2) there are excluded from paragraph (1) shares or stock in the share capital of—

- (a) an open-ended investment company;
- (b) a building society incorporated under the law of, or any part of, the United Kingdom;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (c) a body incorporated under the law of, or any part of, the United Kingdom relating to industrial and provident societies or credit unions;
- (d) any body constituted under the law of an EEA State for purposes equivalent to those of a body falling within sub-paragraph (b) or (c).

#### Marginal Citations

**M23** 1986 c. 53.

#### Instruments creating or acknowledging indebtedness

77.—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), such of the following as do not fall within [<sup>F273</sup>article <sup>F274</sup>... 78]—

- (a) debentures;
- (b) debenture stock;
- (c) loan stock;
- (d) bonds;
- (e) certificates of deposit;
- (f) any other instrument creating or acknowledging indebtedness.

(2) If and to the extent that they would otherwise fall within paragraph (1), there are excluded from that paragraph—

- (a) an instrument acknowledging or creating indebtedness for, or for money borrowed to defray, the consideration payable under a contract for the supply of goods or services;
- (b) a cheque or other bill of exchange, a banker's draft or a letter of credit (but not a bill of exchange accepted by a banker);
- (c) a banknote, a statement showing a balance on a current, deposit or savings account, a lease or other disposition of property, or a heritable security; and
- (d) a contract of insurance.

<sup>F275</sup>(e) .....

(3) An instrument excluded from paragraph (1) of article 78 by paragraph (2)(b) of that article is not thereby to be taken to fall within paragraph (1) of this article.

#### Textual Amendments

**F273** Words in art. 77(1) substituted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)(a)**

**F274** Words in art. 77(1) omitted (16.2.2011) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/133\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)(a)** (with art. 4)

**F275** Art. 77(2)(e) omitted (16.2.2011) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/133\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(2)(b)** (with art. 4)

#### [<sup>F276</sup>Alternative finance investment bonds

77A.—(1) Rights under an alternative finance investment bond, to the extent that they do not fall within article [<sup>F277</sup>77 or] 78.



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(2) For the purposes of this article, arrangements constitute an alternative finance investment bond if—

- (a) the arrangements provide for a person (“the bond-holder”) to pay a sum of money (“the capital”) to another (“the bond-issuer”);
- (b) the arrangements identify assets, or a class of assets, which the bond-issuer will acquire for the purpose of generating income or gains directly or indirectly (“the bond assets”);
- (c) the arrangements specify a period at the end of which they cease to have effect (“the bond term”);
- (d) the bond-issuer undertakes under the arrangements—
  - (i) to make a repayment in respect of the capital (“the redemption payment”) to the bond-holder during or at the end of the bond term (whether or not in instalments); and
  - (ii) to pay to the bond-holder other payments on one or more occasions during or at the end of the bond term (“the additional payments”);
- (e) the amount of the additional payments does not exceed an amount which would, at the time at which the bond is issued, be a reasonable commercial return on a loan of the capital; and
- (f) the arrangements are a security admitted to—
  - (i) an official list (in accordance with the provisions of Directive [2001/34/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council on the admission of securities to official stock exchange listing and on information to be published on those securities); or
  - (ii) trading on a regulated market (within the meaning of Article 4.1(14) of Directive [2004/39/EC](#) of the European Parliament and of the Council on markets in financial instruments) or on a recognised investment exchange (within the meaning of section 285 of the Act).

(3) For the purposes of paragraph (2)—

- (a) the bond-issuer may acquire the bond assets before or after the arrangements take effect;
- (b) the bond assets may be property of any kind, including rights in relation to property owned by someone other than the bond-issuer;
- (c) the identification of the bond assets mentioned in paragraph (2)(b) and the undertakings mentioned in paragraph (2)(d) may (but need not) be described as, or accompanied by a document described as, a declaration of trust;
- (d) the reference to a period in paragraph (2)(c) includes any period specified to end upon the redemption of the bond by the bond-issuer;
- (e) the bond-holder may (but need not) be entitled under the arrangements to terminate them, or participate in terminating them, before the end of the bond term;
- (f) the amount of the additional payments may be—
  - (i) fixed at the beginning of the bond term;
  - (ii) determined wholly or partly by reference to the value of or income generated by the bond assets; or
  - (iii) determined in some other way;
- (g) if the amount of the additional payments is not fixed at the beginning of the bond term, the reference in paragraph (2)(e) to the amount of the additional payments is a reference to the maximum amount of the additional payments;
- (h) the amount of the redemption payment may (but need not) be subject to reduction in the event of a fall in the value of the bond assets or in the rate of income generated by them; and

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (i) entitlement to the redemption payment may (but need not) be capable of being satisfied (whether or not at the option of the bond-issuer or the bond-holder) by the issue or transfer of shares or other securities.
- (4) An instrument excluded from paragraph (1) of article 78 by paragraph (2)(b) of that article is not thereby taken to fall within paragraph (1) of this article.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F276** Art. 77A inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(3)**

**F277** Words in art. 77A(1) inserted (16.2.2011) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2011 \(S.I. 2011/133\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(3)** (with art. 4)

#### Government and public securities

**78.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), loan stock, bonds and other instruments creating or acknowledging indebtedness, issued by or on behalf of any of the following—

- (a) the government of the United Kingdom;
- (b) the Scottish Administration;
- (c) the Executive Committee of the Northern Ireland Assembly;
- (d) the National Assembly for Wales;
- (e) the government of any country or territory outside the United Kingdom;
- (f) a local authority in the United Kingdom or elsewhere; or
- (g) a body the members of which comprise—
  - (i) states including the United Kingdom or another EEA State; or
  - (ii) bodies whose members comprise states including the United Kingdom or another EEA State.
- (2) [<sup>F278</sup>Subject to paragraph (3),] there are excluded from paragraph (1)—
  - (a) so far as applicable, the instruments mentioned in article 77(2)(a) to (d);
  - (b) any instrument creating or acknowledging indebtedness in respect of—
    - (i) money received by the Director of Savings as deposits or otherwise in connection with the business of the National Savings Bank;
    - (ii) money raised under the National Loans Act 1968 <sup>M24</sup> under the auspices of the Director of Savings or treated as so raised by virtue of section 11(3) of the National Debt Act 1972 <sup>M25</sup>.

[<sup>F279</sup>(3) Paragraph (2)(a) does not exclude an instrument which meets the requirements set out in sub-paragraphs (a) to (e) of article 77A(2).]

#### Textual Amendments

**F278** Words in art. 78(2) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(4)**

**F279** Art. 78(3) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(5)**

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

#### Marginal Citations

M24 1968 c. 13.

M25 1972 c. 65.

#### Instruments giving entitlements to investments

79.—(1) Warrants and other instruments entitling the holder to subscribe for any investment of the kind specified by article 76, 77 [<sup>F280</sup>, 77A] or 78.

(2) It is immaterial whether the investment to which the entitlement relates is in existence or identifiable.

(3) An investment of the kind specified by this article is not to be regarded as falling within article 83, 84 or 85.

#### Textual Amendments

**F280** Word in art. 79(1) inserted (24.2.2010) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2010 \(S.I. 2010/86\)](#), art. 1(2), **Sch. para. 5(f)**

#### Certificates representing certain securities

80.—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), certificates or other instruments which confer contractual or property rights (other than rights consisting of an investment of the kind specified by article 83)—

(a) in respect of any investment of the kind specified by any of articles 76 to 79, being an investment held by a person other than the person on whom the rights are conferred by the certificate or instrument; and

(b) the transfer of which may be effected without the consent of that person.

(2) There is excluded from paragraph (1) any certificate or other instrument which confers rights in respect of two or more investments issued by different persons, or in respect of two or more different investments of the kind specified by article 78 and issued by the same person.

#### Units in a collective investment scheme

81. Units in a collective investment scheme (within the meaning of Part XVII of the Act).

#### [<sup>F281</sup> Rights under a pension scheme

82.—(1) Rights under a stakeholder pension scheme.

(2) Rights under a personal pension scheme.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F281** Art. 82 substituted (1.10.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/1969\)](#), arts. 1(2), **2(5)**

#### Options

83.—[<sup>F282</sup>(1)] Options to acquire or dispose of—

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (a) a security or contractually based investment (other than one of a kind specified by this article);
  - (b) currency of the United Kingdom or any other country or territory;
  - (c) palladium, platinum, gold or silver; <sup>F283</sup> ...
  - (d) an option to acquire or dispose of an investment of the kind specified by this article by virtue of paragraph (a), (b) or (c) [<sup>F284</sup>;
  - (e) subject to paragraph (4), an option to acquire or dispose of an option to which paragraph 5, 6, 7 or 10 of Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive (the text of which is set out in Part I of Schedule 2) applies].
- [<sup>F285</sup>(2) Subject to paragraph (4), options—
- (a) to which paragraph (1) does not apply;
  - (b) which relate to commodities;
  - (c) which may be settled physically; and
  - (d) either—
    - (i) to which paragraph 5 or 6 of Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive, the text of which is set out in Part 1 of Schedule 2, applies, or
    - (ii) which in accordance with Article 38 of the Commission Regulation (the text of which is set out in Part 2 of Schedule 2) are to be considered as having the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments and not being for commercial purposes, and to which paragraph 7 of Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive applies.
- (3) Subject to paragraph (4), options—
- (a) to which paragraph (1) does not apply;
  - (b) which may be settled physically; and
  - (c) to which paragraph 10 of Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive (read with the Commission Regulation) applies.
- (4) Paragraphs (1)(e), (2) and (3) only apply to options in relation to which—
- (a) an investment firm or credit institution is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis,
  - (b) a management company is providing, in accordance with [<sup>F286</sup>Article 6(3)] of the UCITS directive, the investment service specified in paragraph 4 or 5 of Section A, or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Section B, of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive, or
  - (c) a market operator is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 8 of Section A of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive.
- (5) Expressions used in paragraphs (1)(e), (2) and (3) and in the markets in financial instruments directive have the same meaning as in that directive.]

#### Textual Amendments

**F282** Art. 83(1): art. 83 renumbered as art. 83(1) (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(a)**

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- F283** Word in art. 83(1)(c) omitted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by virtue of [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(b)(i)**
- F284** Art. 83(1)(e) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(b)(ii)**
- F285** Art. 83(2)-(5) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **26(c)**
- F286** Words in art. 83(4)(b) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 1(3)**

## Futures

**84.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), rights under a contract for the sale of a commodity or property of any other description under which delivery is to be made at a future date and at a price agreed on when the contract is made.

- [<sup>F287</sup>(1A) Subject to paragraph (1D), futures—
- (a) to which paragraph (1) does not apply;
  - (b) which relate to commodities;
  - (c) which may be settled physically; and
  - (d) to which paragraph 5 or 6 of Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive applies.
- (1B) Subject to paragraph (1D), futures and forwards—
- (a) to which paragraph (1) does not apply;
  - (b) which relate to commodities;
  - (c) which may be settled physically;
  - (d) which in accordance with Article 38 of the Commission Regulation (the text of which is set out in Part 2 of Schedule 2) are to be considered as having the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments and not being for commercial purposes; and
  - (e) to which paragraph 7 of Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive applies.
- (1C) Subject to paragraph (1D), futures—
- (a) to which paragraph (1) does not apply;
  - (b) which may be settled physically; and
  - (c) to which paragraph 10 of Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive (read with the Commission Regulation) applies.
- (1D) Paragraph (1A), (1B) and (1C) only apply to futures or forwards in relation to which—
- (a) an investment firm or credit institution is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis,
  - (b) a management company is providing, in accordance with [<sup>F288</sup>Article 6(3)] of the UCITS directive, the investment service specified in paragraph 4 or 5 of Section A, or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Section B, of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive, or
  - (c) a market operator is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 8 of Section A of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(1E) Expressions used in paragraphs (1A) to (1C) and in the markets in financial instruments directive have the same meaning as in that directive.]

(2) There are excluded from paragraph (1) rights under any contract which is made for commercial and not investment purposes.

(3) A contract is to be regarded as made for investment purposes if it is made or traded on a recognised investment exchange, or is made otherwise than on a recognised investment exchange but is expressed to be as traded on such an exchange or on the same terms as those on which an equivalent contract would be made on such an exchange.

(4) A contract not falling within paragraph (3) is to be regarded as made for commercial purposes if under the terms of the contract delivery is to be made within seven days, unless it can be shown that there existed an understanding that (notwithstanding the express terms of the contract) delivery would not be made within seven days.

(5) The following are indications that a contract not falling within paragraph (3) or (4) is made for commercial purposes and the absence of them is an indication that it is made for investment purposes—

- (a) one or more of the parties is a producer of the commodity or other property, or uses it in his business;
- (b) the seller delivers or intends to deliver the property or the purchaser takes or intends to take delivery of it.

(6) It is an indication that a contract is made for commercial purposes that the prices, the lot, the delivery date or other terms are determined by the parties for the purposes of the particular contract and not by reference (or not solely by reference) to regularly published prices, to standard lots or delivery dates or to standard terms.

(7) The following are indications that a contract is made for investment purposes—

- (a) it is expressed to be as traded on an investment exchange;
- (b) performance of the contract is ensured by an investment exchange or a clearing house;
- (c) there are arrangements for the payment or provision of margin.

(8) For the purposes of paragraph (1), a price is to be taken to be agreed on when a contract is made—

- (a) notwithstanding that it is left to be determined by reference to the price at which a contract is to be entered into on a market or exchange or could be entered into at a time and place specified in the contract; or
- (b) in a case where the contract is expressed to be by reference to a standard lot and quality, notwithstanding that provision is made for a variation in the price to take account of any variation in quantity or quality on delivery.

#### Textual Amendments

**F287** Art. 84(1A)-(1E) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), 27

**F288** Words in art. 84(1D)(b) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 1(4)**

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

**C21** Art. 84 applied (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/1335\)](#), reg. 1(2), **Sch. 1 para. 22(3)**; S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Contracts for differences etc.

- 85.**—(1) Subject to paragraph (2), rights under—
- (a) a contract for differences; or
  - (b) any other contract the purpose or pretended purpose of which is to secure a profit or avoid a loss by reference to fluctuations in—
    - (i) the value or price of property of any description; or
    - (ii) an index or other factor designated for that purpose in the contract.
- (2) There are excluded from paragraph (1)—
- (a) rights under a contract if the parties intend that the profit is to be secured or the loss is to be avoided by one or more of the parties taking delivery of any property to which the contract relates;
  - (b) rights under a contract under which money is received by way of deposit on terms that any interest or other return to be paid on the sum deposited will be calculated by reference to fluctuations in an index or other factor;
  - (c) rights under any contract under which—
    - (i) money is received by the Director of Savings as deposits or otherwise in connection with the business of the National Savings Bank; or
    - (ii) money is raised under the National Loans Act 1968 under the auspices of the Director of Savings or treated as so raised by virtue of section 11(3) of the National Debt Act 1972;
  - (d) rights under a qualifying contract of insurance.
- [<sup>F289</sup>(3) Subject to paragraph (4), derivative instruments for the transfer of credit risk—
- (a) to which neither article 83 nor paragraph (1) applies; and
  - (b) to which paragraph 8 of Section C of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive applies.
- (4) Paragraph (3) only applies to derivatives in relation to which—
- (a) an investment firm or credit institution is providing or performing investment services and activities on a professional basis,
  - (b) a management company is providing, in accordance with [<sup>F290</sup>Article 6(3)] of the UCITS directive, the investment service specified in paragraph 4 or 5 of Section A, or the ancillary service specified in paragraph 1 of Section B, of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive, or
  - (c) a market operator is providing the investment service specified in paragraph 8 of Section A of Annex I to the markets in financial instruments directive.
- (5) "Derivative instruments for the transfer of credit risk" has the same meaning as in the markets in financial instruments directive.]

### Textual Amendments

**F289** Art. 85(3)-(5) inserted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **28**

**F290** Words in art. 85(4)(b) substituted (1.7.2011) by [The Undertakings for Collective Investment in Transferable Securities Regulations 2011 \(S.I. 2011/1613\)](#), reg. 1, **Sch. para. 1(5)**

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

### **Lloyd's syndicate capacity and syndicate membership**

- 86.—(1) The underwriting capacity of a Lloyd's syndicate.  
 (2) A person's membership (or prospective membership) of a Lloyd's syndicate.

### **Funeral plan contracts**

87. Rights under a funeral plan contract.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I6** Art. 87 in force at 1.1.2002, see art. 2(2)(a)

### **Regulated mortgage contracts**

88. Rights under a regulated mortgage contract.

#### **Commencement Information**

**I7** Art. 88 in force at 31.10.2004, see art. 1(2)(b) (as read with Treasury notice dated 9.7.2003)

### **[<sup>F291</sup>Regulated home reversion plans**

- 88A. Rights under a regulated home reversion plan.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F291** Arts. 88A, 88B inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **23**

### **[<sup>F291</sup>Regulated home purchase plans**

- 88B. Rights under a regulated home purchase plan.]

#### **Textual Amendments**

**F291** Arts. 88A, 88B inserted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **23**

### **[<sup>F292</sup>Regulated sale and rent back agreements**

- 88C. Rights under a regulated sale and rent back agreement.]



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

#### Textual Amendments

**F292** Art. 88C inserted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **21**

#### Rights to or interests in investments

**89.**—(1) Subject to paragraphs (2) to (4), any right to or interest in anything which is specified by any other provision of this Part (other than [F293article 88, [F29488A, 88B or 88C]]).

(2) Paragraph (1) does not include interests under the trusts of an occupational pension scheme.

(3) Paragraph (1) does not include—

(a) rights to or interests in a contract of insurance of the kind referred to in paragraph (1)(a) of article 60; or

(b) interests under a trust of the kind referred to in paragraph (1)(b) of that article.

(4) Paragraph (1) does not include anything which is specified by any other provision of this Part.

#### Textual Amendments

**F293** Words in art. 89(1) substituted (6.11.2006 for specified purposes, 6.4.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No.2\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/2383\)](#), arts. 1(2), **24**

**F294** Words in art. 89(1) substituted (1.7.2009 for specified purposes, 30.6.2010 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2009 \(S.I. 2009/1342\)](#), arts. 1(2), **22**

## PART IV

### CONSEQUENTIAL PROVISIONS

#### *Regulated mortgage contracts: consequential provisions*

#### Consequential amendments of the Consumer Credit Act 1974

**90.**—(1) The Consumer Credit Act 1974<sup>M26</sup> is amended as follows.

(2) In section 16 (exempt agreements)<sup>M27</sup>, after subsection (6B) insert—

“(6C) This Act does not regulate a consumer credit agreement if—

(a) it is secured by a land mortgage; and

(b) entering into that agreement as lender is a regulated activity for the purposes of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000.

(6D) But section 126, and any other provision so far as it relates to section 126, applies to an agreement which would (but for subsection (6C)) be a regulated agreement.

(6E) Subsection (6C) must be read with—

(a) section 22 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (regulated activities: power to specify classes of activity and categories of investment);

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

- (b) any order for the time being in force under that section; and
  - (c) Schedule 2 to that Act.”.
- (3) In section 43 (advertisements), after subsection (3) insert—
- “(3A) An advertisement does not fall within subsection (1)(a) in so far as it is a communication of an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity within the meaning of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, other than an exempt generic communication.
- (3B) An “exempt generic communication” is a communication to which subsection (1) of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 does not apply, as a result of an order under subsection (5) of that section, because it does not identify a person as providing an investment or as carrying on an activity to which the communication relates.”.
- (4) In section 52 (quotations), after subsection (2) insert—
- “(3) In this section, “quotation” does not include—
- (a) any document which is a communication of an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity within the meaning of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000; or
  - (b) any document (other than one falling within paragraph (a)) provided by an authorised person (within the meaning of that Act) in connection with an agreement which would or might be an exempt agreement as a result of section 16(6C).”.
- (5) In section 53 (duty to display information), after “land” insert “ (other than credit provided under an agreement which is an exempt agreement as a result of section 16(6C)) ”.
- (6) In section 137 (extortionate credit bargains), in subsection (2)(a), after “any agreement” insert “ (other than an agreement which is an exempt agreement as a result of section 16(6C)) ”.
- (7) In section 151 (advertisements for the purposes of ancillary credit business), after subsection (2) insert—
- “(2A) An advertisement does not fall within subsection (1) or (2) in so far as it is a communication of an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity within the meaning of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, other than an exempt generic communication (as defined in section 43(3B)).”.

#### Commencement Information

**I8** Art. 90 in force at 31.10.2004, see art. 1(2)(b) (as read with Treasury notice dated 9.7.2003)

#### Marginal Citations

**M26** 1974 c. 39.

**M27** Subsection (6B) was inserted by s. 22(3) of the [Housing and Planning Act 1986 \(c. 63\)](#) and amended by the [Housing Act 1988 \(c. 50\)](#), Sch. 17, Part I, para. 20, and by the [Government of Wales Act 1998 \(c. 38\)](#), Sch. 18, Part VI.

#### Consequential amendments of subordinate legislation under the Consumer Credit Act 1974

**91.**—(1) In the Consumer Credit (Advertisements) Regulations 1989<sup>M28</sup>, after paragraph (2) of regulation 9 (application of Regulations) insert—

“(3) These Regulations do not apply to any advertisement in so far as it is a communication of an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity within the

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

meaning of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, other than an exempt generic communication.

(4) An “exempt generic communication” is a communication to which subsection (1) of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 does not apply, as a result of an order under subsection (5) of that section, because it does not identify a person as providing an investment or as carrying on an activity to which the communication relates.”

(2) In the Consumer Credit (Content of Quotations) and Consumer Credit (Advertisements) (Amendment) Regulations 1999 <sup>M29</sup>, in the definition of “quotation” in paragraph (1) of regulation 2 (interpretation of Part II)—

(a) omit “or” at the end of sub-paragraph (c); and

(b) after sub-paragraph (d) insert—

“(e) any document which is a communication of an invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity within the meaning of section 21 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000; or

(f) any document (other than one falling within sub-paragraph (e)), provided by an authorised person (within the meaning of that Act) in connection with an agreement which would or might be an exempt agreement as a result of section 16(6C) of the Act.”

#### Commencement Information

**I9** Art. 91 in force at 31.10.2004, see art. 1(2)(b) (as read with Treasury notice dated 9.7.2003)

#### Marginal Citations

**M28** Subsection (6B) was inserted by s. 22(3) of the [Housing and Planning Act 1986 \(c. 63\)](#) and amended by the [Housing Act 1988 \(c. 50\)](#), Sch. 17, Part I, para. 20, and by the [Government of Wales Act 1998 \(c. 38\)](#), Sch. 18, Part VI.

**M29** [S.I. 1989/1125](#), amended by [S.I. 1999/2725](#), [S.I. 1999/3177](#) and [S.I. 2000/1797](#), and modified by [S.I. 1992/3218](#).

## [<sup>F295</sup>PART V

### UNAUTHORISED PERSONS CARRYING ON INSURANCE MEDIATION ACTIVITIES

#### Textual Amendments

**F295** Pt. 5 inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **13**

#### Interpretation

**92.** In this Part—

“designated professional body” means a body which is for the time being designated by the Treasury under section 326 of the Act (designation of professional bodies);

*Status: Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.*

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

“insurance mediation activity” means any regulated activity of the kind specified by article 21, 25(1) or (2), 39A or 53, or, so far as relevant to any of those articles, article 64, which is carried on in relation to a contract of insurance;

“the record” means the record maintained by the Authority under section 347 of the Act (public record of authorised persons etc.);

“recorded insurance intermediary” has the meaning given by article 93(4);

“a relevant member”, in relation to a designated professional body, means a member (within the meaning of section 325(2) of the Act) of the profession in relation to which that designated professional body is established, or a person who is controlled or managed by one or more such members.

### **Duty to maintain a record of unauthorised persons carrying on insurance mediation activities**

**93.**—(1) Subject to articles 95 and 96, the Authority must include in the record every person who—

- (a) as a result of information obtained by virtue of its rules or by virtue of a direction given, or requirement imposed, under section 51(3) of the Act (procedure for applications under Part IV), appears to the Authority to fall within paragraph (2); or
- (b) as a result of information obtained by virtue of article 94, appears to the Authority to fall within paragraph (3).

(2) A person falls within this paragraph if he is, or has entered into a contract by virtue of which he will be, an appointed representative who carries on any insurance mediation activity.

(3) A person falls within this paragraph if—

- (a) he is a relevant member of a designated professional body who carries on, or is proposing to carry on, any insurance mediation activity; and
- (b) the general prohibition does not (or will not) apply to the carrying on of those activities by virtue of section 327 of the Act (exemption from the general prohibition).

(4) In this Part, “recorded insurance intermediary” means a person who is included in the record by virtue of paragraph (1).

(5) The record must include—

- (a) in the case of any recorded insurance intermediary, its address; and
- (b) in the case of a recorded insurance intermediary which is not an individual, the name of the individuals who are responsible for the management of the business carried on by the intermediary, so far as it relates to insurance mediation activities.

### **Members of designated professional bodies**

**94.**—(1) A designated professional body must, by notice in writing, inform the Authority of—

- (a) the name,
- (b) the address, and
- (c) in the case of a relevant member which is not an individual, the name of the individuals who are responsible for the management of the business carried on by the member, so far as it relates to insurance mediation activities,

of any relevant member who falls within paragraph (2).

(2) A relevant member of a designated professional body falls within this paragraph if, in accordance with the rules of that body, he carries on, or proposes to carry on any insurance mediation

*Changes to legislation: The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)*

activity but does not have, and does not propose to apply for, Part IV permission on the basis that the general prohibition does not (or will not) apply to the carrying on of that activity by virtue of section 327 of the Act.

(3) A designated professional body must also, by notice in writing, inform the Authority of any change in relation to the matters specified in sub-paragraphs (a) to (c) of paragraph (1).

(4) A designated professional body must inform the Authority when a relevant member to whom paragraph (2) applies ceases, for whatever reason, to carry on insurance mediation activities.

(5) The Authority may give directions to a designated professional body as to the manner in which the information referred to in paragraphs (1), (3) and (4) must be provided.

### **Exclusion from record where not fit and proper to carry on insurance mediation activities**

**95.**—(1) If it appears to the Authority that a person who falls within article 93(2) (appointed representatives) (“AR”) is not a fit and proper person to carry on insurance mediation activities, it may decide not to include him in the record or, if that person is already included in the record, to remove him from the record.

(2) Where the Authority proposes to make a determination under paragraph (1), it must give AR a warning notice.

(3) If the Authority makes a determination under paragraph (1), it must give AR a decision notice.

(4) If the Authority gives AR a decision notice under paragraph (3), AR may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

(5) The Authority may, on the application of AR, revoke a determination under paragraph (1).

(6) If the Authority decides to grant the application, it must give AR written notice of its decision.

(7) If the Authority proposes to refuse the application, it must give AR a warning notice.

(8) If the Authority decides to refuse the application, it must give AR a decision notice.

(9) If the Authority gives AR a decision notice under paragraph (8), AR may refer the matter to the Tribunal.

(10) Sections 393 and 394 of the Act (third party rights and access to Authority material) apply to a warning notice given in accordance with paragraph (2) or (7) and to a decision notice given in accordance with paragraph (3) or (8).

### **Exclusion from the record where Authority has exercised its powers under Part XX of the Act**

**96.**—(1) If a person who appears to the Authority to fall within article 93(3) (member of a designated professional body) falls within paragraph (2) or (3), the Authority must not include him in the record or, if that person is already included in the record, must remove him from the record.

(2) A person falls within this paragraph if, by virtue of a direction given by the Authority under section 328(1) of the Act (directions in relation to the general prohibition), section 327(1) of the Act does not apply in relation to the carrying on by him of any insurance mediation activity.

(3) A person falls within this paragraph if the Authority has made an order under section 329(2) of the Act (orders in relation to the general prohibition) disapplying section 327(1) of the Act in relation to the carrying on by him of any insurance mediation activity.]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## [<sup>F296</sup>PART 6 MISCELLANEOUS

### Textual Amendments

**F296** Pt. 6 and heading inserted (15.7.2004) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) Order 2004 \(S.I. 2004/1610\)](#), arts. 1(2), 3

### Disapplication of section 49(2) of the Act

**97.** In section 49 of the Act (persons connected with an applicant for Part 4 permission), after subsection (2) insert—

- “(2A) But subsection (2) does not apply to the extent that the permission relates to—
- (a) an insurance mediation activity (within the meaning given by paragraph 2(5) of Schedule 6); or
  - (b) a regulated activity involving a regulated mortgage contract.”.]

*Greg Pope*

*Jim Dowd*

Two of the Lords Commissioners of Her  
Majesty’s Treasury

## SCHEDULE 1

Article 3(1)

### CONTRACTS OF INSURANCE

#### Modifications etc. (not altering text)

- C22** Sch. 1 applied in part (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/1335\)](#), **art. 25(2)**, reg. 1(2); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)
- C23** Sch. 1 applied in part (1.12.2001) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Financial Promotion\) Order 2001 \(S.I. 2001/1335\)](#), **art. 10(2)**, reg. 1(2); S.I. 2001/3538, art. 2(1)

## PART I

### CONTRACTS OF GENERAL INSURANCE

#### Accident

1. Contracts of insurance providing fixed pecuniary benefits or benefits in the nature of indemnity (or a combination of both) against risks of the person insured or, in the case of a contract made by virtue of section 140, 140A or 140B of the Local Government Act 1972 <sup>M30</sup> (or, in Scotland, section 86(1) of the Local Government (Scotland) Act 1973 <sup>M31</sup>), a person for whose benefit the contract is made—

- (a) sustaining injury as the result of an accident or of an accident of a specified class; or
- (b) dying as a result of an accident or of an accident of a specified class; or
- (c) becoming incapacitated in consequence of disease or of disease of a specified class,

including contracts relating to industrial injury and occupational disease but excluding contracts falling within paragraph 2 of Part I of, or paragraph IV of Part II of, this Schedule.

#### Marginal Citations

- M30** [S.I. 1999/2725](#), amended by [S.I. 2000/1797](#).
- M31** 1972 c. 70. Section 140 was amended by the [Local Government \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Act 1982 \(c. 30\)](#), s. 39(1) and Sch. 7, Part XVI; by the [Insurance Companies Act 1982 \(c. 50\)](#), Sch. 5, para. 13; and by the [London Regional Transport Act 1984 \(c. 32\)](#), Sch. 7. Section 140A was inserted by s. 39(2) of the [Local Government \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Act 1982 \(c. 30\)](#), and amended by the [Planning \(Consequential Provisions\) Act 1990 \(c. 10\)](#), Sch. 2, para. 28, and by the [Environment Act 1995 \(c. 25\)](#), Sch. 24. Section 140B was inserted by s. 39(2) of the [Local Government \(Miscellaneous Provisions\) Act 1982](#), and amended by the [Local Government Act 1985 \(c. 51\)](#), Sch. 17, and by the [Local Government \(Wales\) Act 1994 \(c. 19\)](#), Sch. 15, para. 31.

#### Sickness

2. Contracts of insurance providing fixed pecuniary benefits or benefits in the nature of indemnity (or a combination of both) against risks of loss to the persons insured attributable to sickness or infirmity but excluding contracts falling within paragraph IV of Part II of this Schedule.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### **Land vehicles**

3. Contracts of insurance against loss of or damage to vehicles used on land, including motor vehicles but excluding railway rolling stock.

### **Railway rolling stock**

4. Contract of insurance against loss of or damage to railway rolling stock.

### **Aircraft**

5. Contracts of insurance upon aircraft or upon the machinery, tackle, furniture or equipment of aircraft.

### **Ships**

6. Contracts of insurance upon vessels used on the sea or on inland water, or upon the machinery, tackle, furniture or equipment of such vessels.

### **Goods in transit**

7. Contracts of insurance against loss of or damage to merchandise, baggage and all other goods in transit, irrespective of the form of transport.

### **Fire and natural forces**

8. Contracts of insurance against loss of or damage to property (other than property to which paragraphs 3 to 7 relate) due to fire, explosion, storm, natural forces other than storm, nuclear energy or land subsidence.

### **Damage to property**

9. Contracts of insurance against loss of or damage to property (other than property to which paragraphs 3 to 7 relate) due to hail or frost or any other event (such as theft) other than those mentioned in paragraph 8.

### **Motor vehicle liability**

10. Contracts of insurance against damage arising out of or in connection with the use of motor vehicles on land, including third-party risks and carrier's liability.

### **Aircraft liability**

11. Contracts of insurance against damage arising out of or in connection with the use of aircraft, including third-party risks and carrier's liability.

### **Liability of ships**

12. Contracts of insurance against damage arising out of or in connection with the use of vessels on the sea or on inland water, including third party risks and carrier's liability.

### **General liability**

13. Contracts of insurance against risks of the persons insured incurring liabilities to third parties, the risks in question not being risks to which paragraph 10, 11 or 12 relates.



**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

### **Credit**

**14.** Contracts of insurance against risks of loss to the persons insured arising from the insolvency of debtors of theirs or from the failure (otherwise than through insolvency) of debtors of theirs to pay their debts when due.

### **Suretyship**

**15.—(1)** Contracts of insurance against the risks of loss to the persons insured arising from their having to perform contracts of guarantee entered into by them.

(2) Fidelity bonds, performance bonds, administration bonds, bail bonds or customs bonds or similar contracts of guarantee, where these are—

- (a) effected or carried out by a person not carrying on a banking business;
- (b) not effected merely incidentally to some other business carried on by the person effecting them; and
- (c) effected in return for the payment of one or more premiums.

### **Miscellaneous financial loss**

**16.** Contracts of insurance against any of the following risks, namely—

- (a) risks of loss to the persons insured attributable to interruptions of the carrying on of business carried on by them or to reduction of the scope of business so carried on;
- (b) risks of loss to the persons insured attributable to their incurring unforeseen expense (other than loss such as is covered by contracts falling within paragraph 18);
- (c) risks which do not fall within sub-paragraph (a) or (b) and which are not of a kind such that contracts of insurance against them fall within any other provision of this Schedule.

### **Legal expenses**

**17.** Contracts of insurance against risks of loss to the persons insured attributable to their incurring legal expenses (including costs of litigation).

### **Assistance**

**18.** Contracts of insurance providing either or both of the following benefits, namely—

- (a) assistance (whether in cash or in kind) for persons who get into difficulties while travelling, while away from home or while away from their permanent residence; or
- (b) assistance (whether in cash or in kind) for persons who get into difficulties otherwise than as mentioned in sub-paragraph (a).

## **PART II**

### **CONTRACTS OF LONG-TERM INSURANCE**

#### **Life and annuity**

**I.** Contracts of insurance on human life or contracts to pay annuities on human life, but excluding (in each case) contracts within paragraph III.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## Marriage and birth

**II.** Contract of insurance to provide a sum on marriage [<sup>F297</sup>or the formation of a civil partnership] or on the birth of a child, being contracts expressed to be in effect for a period of more than one year.

### Textual Amendments

**F297** Words in Sch. 1 Pt. II para. 2 inserted (5.12.2005) by [The Civil Partnership Act 2004 \(Amendments to Subordinate Legislation\) Order 2005 \(S.I. 2005/2114\)](#), reg. 1, [Sch. 16 para. 1\(5\)](#)

## Linked long term

**III.** Contracts of insurance on human life or contracts to pay annuities on human life where the benefits are wholly or partly to be determined by references to the value of, or the income from, property of any description (whether or not specified in the contracts) or by reference to fluctuations in, or in an index of, the value of property of any description (whether or not so specified).

## Permanent health

**IV.** Contracts of insurance providing specified benefits against risks of persons becoming incapacitated in consequence of sustaining injury as a result of an accident or of an accident of a specified class or of sickness or infirmity, being contracts that—

- (a) are expressed to be in effect for a period of not less than five years, or until the normal retirement age for the persons concerned, or without limit of time; and
- (b) either are not expressed to be terminable by the insurer, or are expressed to be so terminable only in special circumstances mentioned in the contract.

## Tontines

**V.** Tontines.

## Capital redemption contracts

**VI.** Capital redemption contracts, where effected or carried out by a person who does not carry on a banking business, and otherwise carries on a regulated activity of the kind specified by article 10(1) or (2).

## Pension fund management

**VII.**

- (a) Pension fund management contracts, and
- (b) pension fund management contracts which are combined with contracts of insurance covering either conservation of capital or payment of a minimum interest,

where effected or carried out by a person who does not carry on a banking business, and otherwise carries on a regulated activity of the kind specified by article 10(1) or (2).

## Collective insurance etc.

**VIII.** Contracts of a kind referred to in article 1(2)(e) of the first life insurance directive.

## Social insurance

**IX.** Contracts of a kind referred to in article 1(3) of the first life insurance directive.

[<sup>F298</sup>SCHEDULE 2

Article 3(1)

### SECTIONS A AND C OF ANNEX I TO THE MARKETS IN FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS DIRECTIVE AND RELATED COMMUNITY SUBORDINATE LEGISLATION

#### Textual Amendments

**F298** Sch. 2 substituted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **29**

## PART 1

### SECTION C OF ANNEX I TO THE MARKETS IN FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS DIRECTIVE

“Financial instruments

1. Transferable securities;
2. Money-market instruments;
3. Units in collective investment undertakings;
4. Options, futures, swaps, forward rate agreements and any other derivative contracts relating to securities, currencies, interest rates or yields, or other derivatives instruments, financial indices or financial measures which may be settled physically or in cash;
5. Options, futures, swaps, forward rate agreements and any other derivative contracts relating to commodities that must be settled in cash or may be settled in cash at the option of one of the parties (otherwise than by reason of a default or other termination event);
6. Options, futures, swaps, and any other derivative contracts relating to commodities that can be physically settled provided that they are traded on a regulated market and/or an MTF;
7. Options, futures, swaps, forwards and any other derivative contracts relating to commodities, that can be physically settled not otherwise mentioned in C.6 and not being for commercial purposes, which have the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments, having regard to whether, inter alia, they are cleared and settled through recognised clearing houses or are subject to regular margin calls;
8. Derivative instruments for the transfer of credit risk;
9. Financial contracts for differences;
10. Options, futures, swaps, forward rate agreements and any other derivative contracts relating to climatic variables, freight rates, emission allowances or inflation rates or other official economic statistics that must be settled in cash or may be settled in cash at the option of one of the parties (otherwise than by reason of a default or other termination event), as well as any other derivative contracts relating to assets, rights, obligations, indices and measures not otherwise mentioned in this

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Section, which have the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments, having regard to whether, inter alia, they are traded on a regulated market or an MTF, are cleared and settled through recognised clearing houses or are subject to regular margin calls.”

## PART 2

### CHAPTER VI OF THE COMMISSION REGULATION

#### “Derivative financial instruments

##### *Article 38*

##### *Characteristics of other derivative financial instruments*

1. For the purposes of Section C(7) of Annex I to Directive [2004/39/EC](#), a contract which is not a spot contract within the meaning of paragraph 2 of this Article and which is not covered by paragraph 4 shall be considered as having the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments and not being for commercial purposes if it satisfies the following conditions:

- (a) it meets one of the following sets of criteria:
  - (i) it is traded on a third country trading facility that performs a similar function to a regulated market or an MTF;
  - (ii) it is expressly stated to be traded on, or is subject to the rules of, a regulated market, an MTF or such a third country trading facility;
  - (iii) it is expressly stated to be equivalent to a contract traded on a regulated market, MTF or such a third country trading facility;
- (b) it is cleared by a clearing house or other entity carrying out the same functions as a central counterparty, or there are arrangements for the payment or provision of margin in relation to the contract;
- (c) it is standardised so that, in particular, the price, the lot, the delivery date or other terms are determined principally by reference to regularly published prices, standard lots or standard delivery dates.

2. A spot contract for the purposes of paragraph 1 means a contract for the sale of a commodity, asset or right, under the terms of which delivery is scheduled to be made within the longer of the following periods:

- (a) two trading days;
- (b) the period generally accepted in the market for that commodity, asset or right as the standard delivery period.

However, a contract is not a spot contract if, irrespective of its explicit terms, there is an understanding between the parties to the contract that delivery of the underlying is to be postponed and not to be performed within the period mentioned in the first subparagraph.

3. For the purposes of Section C(10) of Annex I to Directive [2004/39/EC](#), a derivative contract relating to an underlying referred to in that Section or in Article 39 shall be considered to have the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments if one of the following conditions is satisfied:

- (a) that contract is settled in cash or may be settled in cash at the option of one or more of the parties, otherwise than by reason of a default or other termination event;
- (b) that contract is traded on a regulated market or an MTF;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

(c) the conditions laid down in paragraph 1 are satisfied in relation to that contract.

4. A contract shall be considered to be for commercial purposes for the purposes of Section C(7) of Annex I to Directive 2004/39/EC, and as not having the characteristics of other derivative financial instruments for the purposes of Sections C(7) and (10) of that Annex, if it is entered into with or by an operator or administrator of an energy transmission grid, energy balancing mechanism or pipeline network, and it is necessary to keep in balance the supplies and uses of energy at a given time.

### Article 39

#### *Derivatives within Section C(10) of Annex I to Directive 2004/39/EC*

In addition to derivative contracts of a kind referred to in Section C(10) of Annex I to Directive 2004/39/EC, a derivative contract relating to any of the following shall fall within that Section if it meets the criteria set out in that Section and in Article 38(3):

- (a) telecommunications bandwidth;
- (b) commodity storage capacity;
- (c) transmission or transportation capacity relating to commodities, whether cable, pipeline or other means;
- (d) an allowance, credit, permit, right or similar asset which is directly linked to the supply, distribution or consumption of energy derived from renewable resources;
- (e) a geological, environmental or other physical variable;
- (f) any other asset or right of a fungible nature, other than a right to receive a service, that is capable of being transferred;
- (g) an index or measure related to the price or value of, or volume of transactions in any asset, right, service or obligation.”

## PART 3

### SECTION A OF ANNEX I TO THE MARKETS IN FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS DIRECTIVE

“Investment services and activities

1. Reception and transmission of orders in relation to one or more financial instruments.
2. Execution of orders on behalf of clients.
3. Dealing on own account.
4. Portfolio management.
5. Investment advice.
6. Underwriting of financial instruments and/or placing of financial instruments on a firm commitment basis.
7. Placing of financial instruments without a firm commitment basis.
8. Operation of Multilateral Trading Facilities.”

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## PART 4

### ARTICLE 52 OF COMMISSION DIRECTIVE [2006/73/EC](#)

#### “Article 52

##### Investment advice

For the purposes of the definition of “investment advice” in Article 4(1)(4) of Directive [2004/39/EC](#), a personal recommendation is a recommendation that is made to a person in his capacity as an investor or potential investor, or in his capacity as an agent for an investor or potential investor.

That recommendation must be presented as suitable for that person, or must be based on a consideration of the circumstances of that person, and must constitute a recommendation to take one of the following sets of steps:

- (a) to buy, sell, subscribe for, exchange, redeem, hold or underwrite a particular financial instrument;
- (b) to exercise or not to exercise any right conferred by a particular financial instrument to buy, sell, subscribe for, exchange, or redeem a financial instrument.

A recommendation is not a personal recommendation if it is issued exclusively through distribution channels or to the public.”]

[<sup>F299</sup>SCHEDULE 3

Article 3(1)

### ARTICLE 2 OF THE MARKETS IN FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS DIRECTIVE

#### Textual Amendments

**F299** Sch. 3 substituted (1.4.2007 for specified purposes, 1.11.2007 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment No. 3\) Order 2006 \(S.I. 2006/3384\)](#), arts. 1(2), **30**

#### “Article 2

##### Exemptions

1. This Directive shall not apply to:
  - (a) insurance undertakings as defined in Article 1 of Directive [73/239/EEC](#) or assurance undertakings as defined in Article 1 of Directive [2002/83/EC](#) or undertakings carrying on the reinsurance and retrocession activities referred to in Directive [64/225/EEC](#);
  - (b) persons which provide investment services exclusively for their parent undertakings, for their subsidiaries or for other subsidiaries of their parent undertakings;
  - (c) persons providing an investment service where that service is provided in an incidental manner in the course of a professional activity and that activity is regulated by legal or regulatory provisions or a code of ethics governing the profession which do not exclude the provision of that service;
  - (d) persons who do not provide any investment services or activities other than dealing on own account unless they are market makers or deal on own account outside a regulated market or an MTF on an organised, frequent and systematic basis by providing a system accessible to third parties in order to engage in dealings with them;

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

- (e) persons which provide investment services consisting exclusively in the administration of employee-participation schemes;
- (f) persons which provide investment services which only involve both administration of employee-participation schemes and the provision of investment services exclusively for their parent undertakings, for their subsidiaries or for other subsidiaries of their parent undertakings;
- (g) the members of the European System of Central Banks and other national bodies performing similar functions and other public bodies charged with or intervening in the management of the public debt;
- (h) collective investment undertakings and pension funds whether coordinated at Community level or not and the depositaries and managers of such undertakings;
- (i) persons dealing on own account in financial instruments, or providing investment services in commodity derivatives or derivative contracts included in Annex I, Section C10 to the clients of their main business, provided this is an ancillary activity to their main business, when considered on a group basis, and that main business is not the provision of investment services within the meaning of this Directive or banking services under Directive 2000/12/EC;
- (j) persons providing investment advice in the course of providing another professional activity not covered by this Directive provided that the provision of such advice is not specifically remunerated;
- (k) persons whose main business consists of dealing on own account in commodities and/or commodity derivatives. This exception shall not apply where the persons that deal on own account in commodities and/or commodity derivatives are part of a group the main business of which is the provision of other investment services within the meaning of this Directive or banking services under Directive 2000/12/EC;
- (l) firms which provide investment services and/or perform investment activities consisting exclusively in dealing on own account on markets in financial futures or options or other derivatives and on cash markets for the sole purpose of hedging positions on derivatives markets or which deal for the accounts of other members of those markets or make prices for them and which are guaranteed by clearing members of the same markets, where responsibility for ensuring the performance of contracts entered into by such firms is assumed by clearing members of the same markets;
- (m) associations set up by Danish and Finnish pensions funds with the sole aim of managing the assets of pension funds that are members of those associations;
- (n) ‘agenti di cambio’ whose activities and functions are governed by Article 201 of Italian Legislative Decree No 58 of 24 February 1998.

2. The rights conferred by this Directive shall not extend to the provision of services as counterparty in transactions carried out by public bodies dealing with public debt or by members of the European System of Central Banks performing their tasks as provided for by the Treaty and the Statute of the European System of Central Banks and of the European Central Bank or performing equivalent functions under national provisions.

3. In order to take account of developments on financial markets, and to ensure the uniform application of this Directive, the Commission, acting in accordance with the procedure referred to in Article 64(2), may, in respect of exemptions (c), (i) and (k) define the criteria for determining when an activity is to be considered as ancillary to the main business on a group level as well as for determining when an activity is provided in an incidental manner.”]

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

## [<sup>F300</sup>SCHEDULE 4

Article 4

### RELEVANT TEXT OF THE INSURANCE MEDIATION DIRECTIVE

#### Textual Amendments

**F300** Sch. 4 inserted (31.10.2004 for specified purposes, 14.1.2005 in so far as not already in force) by [The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 \(Regulated Activities\) \(Amendment\) \(No. 2\) Order 2003 \(S.I. 2003/1476\)](#), arts. 1(3), **12**

## Part 1

### Article 1.2

“This Directive shall not apply to persons providing mediation services for insurance contracts if all the following conditions are met:

- (a) the insurance contract only requires knowledge of the insurance cover that is provided;
- (b) the insurance contract is not a life assurance contract;
- (c) the insurance contract does not cover any liability risks;
- (d) the principal professional activity of the person is other than insurance mediation;
- (e) the insurance is complementary to the product or service supplied by any provider, where such insurance covers:
  - (i) the risk of breakdown, loss of or damage to goods supplied by that provider; or
  - (ii) damage to or loss of baggage and other risks linked to the travel booked with that provider, even if the insurance covers life assurance or liability risks, provided that the cover is ancillary to the main cover for the risks linked to that travel;
- (f) the amount of the annual premium does not exceed EUR 500 and the total duration of the insurance contract, including any renewals, does not exceed five years.”

## Part II

### Article 2.3

““Insurance mediation” means the activities of introducing, proposing or carrying out other work preparatory to the conclusion of contracts of insurance, or of concluding such contracts, or of assisting in the administration and performance of such contracts, in particular in the event of a claim.

These activities when undertaken by an insurance undertaking or an employee of an insurance undertaking who is acting under the responsibility of the insurance undertaking shall not be considered as insurance mediation.

The provision of information on an incidental basis in the context of another professional activity provided that the purpose of that activity is not to assist the customer in concluding or performing an insurance contract, the management of claims of an insurance undertaking on a professional basis, and loss adjusting and expert appraisal of claims shall also not be considered as insurance mediation.”



## Part III

### Article 2.4

““Reinsurance mediation” means the activities of introducing, proposing or carrying out other work preparatory to the conclusion of contracts of reinsurance, or of concluding such contracts, or of assisting in the administration and performance of such contracts, in particular in the event of a claim.

These activities when undertaken by a reinsurance undertaking or an employee of a reinsurance undertaking who is acting under the responsibility of the reinsurance undertaking are not considered as reinsurance mediation.

The provision of information on an incidental basis in the context of another professional activity provided that the purpose of that activity is not to assist the customer in concluding or performing a reinsurance contract, the management of claims of a reinsurance undertaking on a professional basis, and loss adjusting and expert appraisal of claims shall also not be considered as reinsurance mediation.”]

---

## EXPLANATORY NOTE

*(This note is not part of the Order)*

This Order specifies kinds of activities and investments for the purposes of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (“the Act”). When an activity of a specified kind is carried on by way of business in relation to an investment of a specified kind, it is a “regulated activity” for the purposes of the Act. The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Carrying on Regulated Activities by Way of Business) Order 2001 (S.I. 2001/1177) makes provision as to the circumstances in which a person is, or is not, to be regarded as carrying on a regulated activity by way of business. Section 19 of the Act prohibits person who are not authorised or exempt from carrying on any regulated activity in the United Kingdom. Contravention of that prohibition is a criminal offence.

Part I of this Order makes provision for the citation, commencement and interpretation of the Order.

Part II specifies types of activities. Those activities are accepting deposits; effecting and carrying out contracts of insurance; dealing in investments as principal, or as agent; arranging deals in investments; managing investments; safeguarding and administering investments; sending dematerialised instructions; establishing etc. a collective investment scheme, or a stakeholder pension scheme; advising on investments; certain activities in relation to Lloyd’s; entering into funeral plan contracts, or regulated mortgage contracts; and agreeing to carry on certain of the above activities.

Part II also sets out the exclusions (if any) applicable to each kind of specified activity.

Part III of the Order specifies the kinds of investment which are relevant for determining whether a person is carrying on a regulated activity for the purposes of the Act.

Part IV makes consequential amendments to the Consumer Credit Act 1974, and subordinate legislation under that Act, so as to exclude from its scope those categories of mortgage contract which are specified under this Order and which will therefore be regulated under the Act.

Schedule 1 to the Order lists the classes of insurance contract which are relevant to the scope of the activity specified by article 10.

**Status:** Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:** The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations. (See end of Document for details)

Schedules 2 and 3 set out the text of certain provisions of Council Directive No. [93/22/EEC](#) on investment services in the securities field which are relevant to the applicability of the exclusions contained in the Order (see article 4).

**Status:**

Point in time view as at 23/12/2011.

**Changes to legislation:**

The Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Regulated Activities) Order 2001 is up to date with all changes known to be in force on or before 24 June 2024. There are changes that may be brought into force at a future date. Changes that have been made appear in the content and are referenced with annotations.